



Owner's Manual

A1

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik



www.puretyre.co.uk

Table of Contents

Notes on this Owner's Manual 	4	Heating and cooling	55
Quick reference	6	Heating system/air conditioner	55
FAQs	6	Driving	60
Before you set off	6	General notes	60
Breakdowns and emergencies	6	Steering	62
Useful functions	6	Starting and switching off the engine (vehicles with ignition lock)	62
Tips and tricks	6	Starting and switching off the engine (vehicles with convenience key)	64
Controls and displays	8	Driver messages	66
View of cockpit	8	Start/stop system	67
Controls at a glance	8	Handbrake	69
Instruments and warning/ indicator lamps	10	Hill hold assist	70
Instruments	10	Automatic gearbox 	70
Warning and indicator lamps	14	Towing a trailer	78
Driver information system	21	Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan	78
Overview	21	Removable towing bracket	80
Controls	22	Driver assistance	85
On-board computer	23	Driver assist systems	85
Efficiency program	23	Speed warning function	85
Setting off	26	Cruise control system	85
Doors and windows	26	Audi drive select	86
Central locking system	26	Parking aids	89
Boot lid	33	General notes	89
Child lock	34	Rear parking aid	89
Electric windows	34	Parking system plus	90
Panorama sun roof	35	Adjusting graphic display and warning beeps	91
Lights and vision	37	Fault warnings	91
Exterior lights	37	Towing bracket	92
Interior lights	40	Intelligent technology	93
Clear vision	41	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)	93
Windscreen wipers	43	Brakes	95
Seats and storage	46	Electro-mechanical power steering	96
General notes	46	Four-wheel drive (quattro)	96
Front seats	46	Power management	97
Head restraints	47	Information saved in the control units ...	98
Ashtray	48	Safety	100
Cigarette lighter	49	Safe driving	100
Electrical socket	49	General notes	100
Storage	50	Correct sitting positions	101
Luggage compartment	51		
Roof carrier	53		

Child seats	103	Spare wheel	159
Fitting child seats	106	Jump-starting	161
Pedal area	108	Tow-starting / towing away	163
Stowing luggage safely	108		
Seat belts	111	Fuses and bulbs	167
Why is it so important to use seat belts? ..	111	Fuses	167
Forces acting in a collision	112	Bulbs	170
How to wear seat belts properly	113	Changing bulbs in headlight unit	172
Belt tensioners	115	Changing bulb for front fog light	176
		Changing bulbs for rear lights	177
Airbag system	117	Accessories and technical data ..	180
Description of airbag system	117	Accessories and modifications	
Front airbags	118	to the vehicle	180
Side airbags	121	Accessories and replacement parts	180
Head-protection airbags	122	Modifications	180
Deactivating the front passenger's airbag	124	Radio transmitters and business	
		equipment	180
Service and care	125	Technical data	182
Checking and topping up fluids ..	125	Vehicle identification data	182
Fuel	125	Explanation of technical data	182
Filling the tank	126	Dimensions	183
Emission control systems	127	Capacities	183
Engine compartment	128	Weights	183
Engine oil	130	Engine data	185
Cooling system	132		
Brake fluid	133	Index	187
Battery	134		
Windscreen washer	136		
Service interval display	136		
Wheels	138		
Tyres and rims	138		
Tyre pressure loss indicator	143		
Run-flat tyres	144		
Care of vehicle and cleaning	146		
General notes	146		
Washing the vehicle	146		
Notes on cleaning and care	147		
Taking the vehicle out of service	151		
Self-help	152		
Mobility	152		
General notes	152		
Equipment	152		
Tyre repair kit	153		
Changing a wheel	155		

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of your particular Audi model and contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings.

Please ensure that this Owner's Manual is always kept in the vehicle. It should always be available to anyone else driving the vehicle, i.e. anyone renting, borrowing or buying the vehicle from you.

This manual describes **the equipment available for the vehicle at the time of going to print**.

Some of the equipment described here will not be available until a later date, or may only be available in certain markets.

Some sections of this Owner's Manual do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system". This optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also marked with an asterisk "*".

Illustrations are intended as a general guide, and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle in some details.

All references to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

► The section is continued on the following page.

⇒ ⚠ Refers to a "WARNING" within the same section. If the WARNING symbol is followed by a page number the warning text referred to is included in a different section.



For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.



Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.



WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.



CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.

FAQs

Before you set off

- How do I adjust the seats? ⇒ *page 46.*
- How do I adjust the steering wheel?
⇒ *page 62.*
- How does the selector lever for the automatic gearbox work? ⇒ *page 71.*
- How do I adjust the exterior mirrors?
⇒ *page 41.*
- How do I refuel my vehicle? ⇒ *page 126.*
- How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇒ *page 130.*
- Where is the windscreen washer container?
⇒ *page 125.*
- How can I store the tyre pressures?
⇒ *page 144.*
- How do I drive with a trailer or caravan?
⇒ *page 78.*

Breakdowns and emergencies

- How do I jump-start the vehicle? ⇒ *page 161.*
- Where can I find the warning triangle?
⇒ *page 152.*
- Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇒ *page 152.*
- Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇒ *page 140.*
- Which airbags are installed in my vehicle?
⇒ *page 117.*
- Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇒ *page 163.*
- How can I release the tank flap manually?
⇒ *page 127.*

Useful functions

- How can I use the parking aid? ⇒ *page 89.*
- How do I operate the main beam assist for the headlights? ⇒ *page 39.*
- How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇒ *page 41.*
- How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇒ *page 86, Audi drive select.*

Tips and tricks

- How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇒ *page 26, Central locking system.*
- How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇒ *page 35.*
- How can I deactivate the front passenger's air-bag? ⇒ *page 124.*
- How do I secure a child seat? ⇒ *page 106.*
- What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇒ *page 146.*
- How can I drive (more) economically?
⇒ *page 60.*
- How can I see when the next service date is?
⇒ *page 136.*

View of cockpit

Controls at a glance

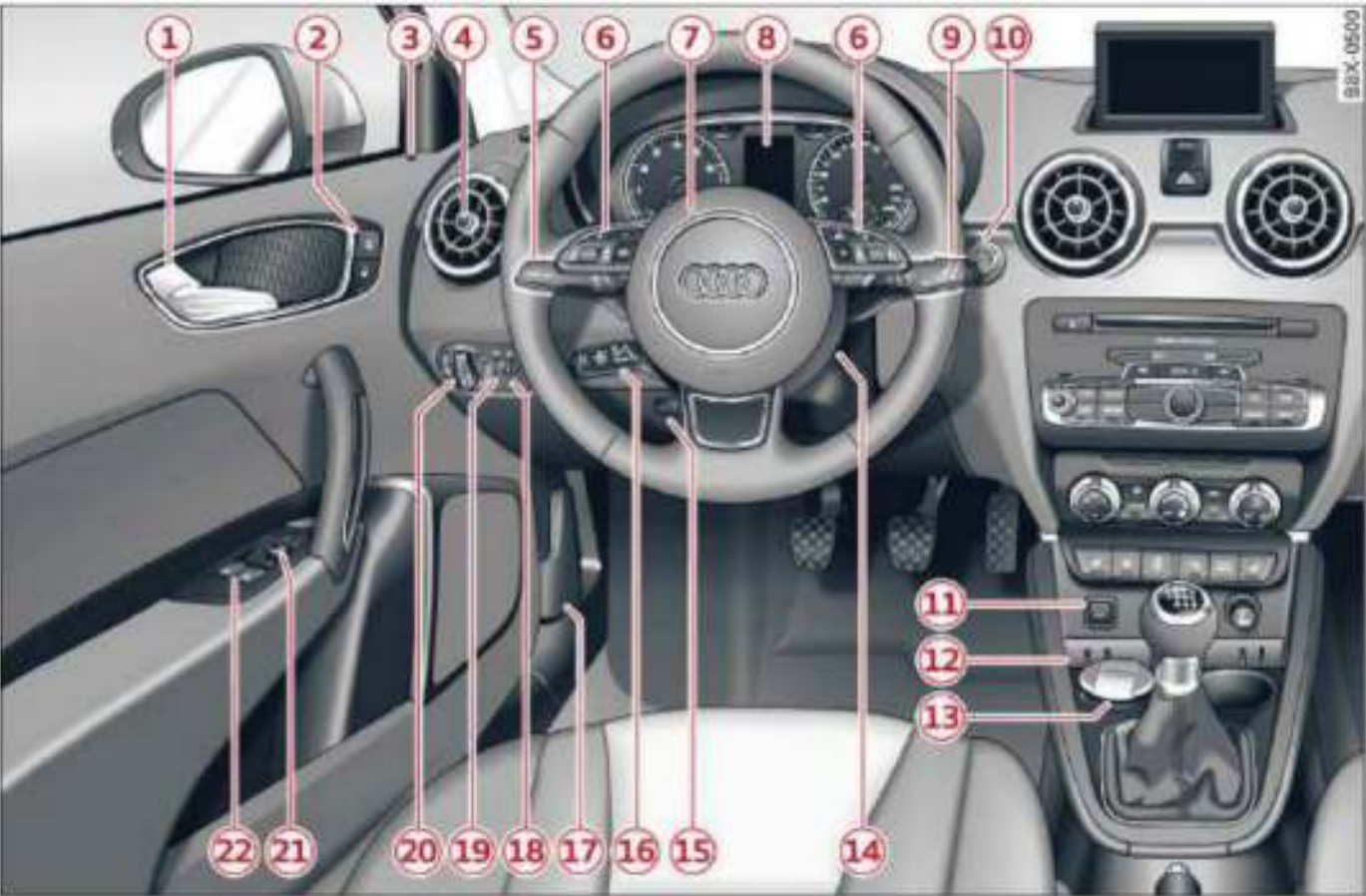


Fig. 1 Front cabin: Left side



Fig. 2 Front cabin: Right side

① Door handle		– Hazard warning lights	40
② Central locking switch	30	②④ Infotainment display	
③ LED for central locking/anti-theft alarm system	26	②⑤ Glove box with optional equipment:	
④ Air outlets	55	– CD changer	50
⑤ Lever for turn signals and main beam headlights	38	– Button for tyre pressure loss indicator	143
⑥ Controls for audio, telephone, navigation system and driver information system	22	②⑥ Front passenger's airbag	118
⑦ Steering wheel with horn and driver's airbag	118	②⑦ Control console for infotainment	
⑧ Instrument cluster	10	②⑧ Controls for the following (as applicable):	
⑨ Control lever for:		– Heating and ventilation system or manual air conditioner or	56
– Windscreen wipers and washer	43	– Automatic air conditioner	56
– Driver information system (on vehicles without multi-function steering wheel)	22	②⑨ Depending on equipment fitted buttons for:	
⑩ START ENGINE STOP button	64	– Seat heating or	57, 59
⑪ AUX IN connection		– Rear window heating or	57, 59
⑫ Coin holder		– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)	93
⑬ Ashtray or location for cup holder	48	– Parking aid	90
⑭ Steering column with:		– Drive select	86
– Manual operation function for ignition (on vehicles with electronic ignition lock)	66	③⑩ Cigarette lighter / electrical socket	49
– Ignition lock (on vehicles with mechanical ignition lock)	62	③⑪ Gear lever or selector lever (for automatic gearbox)	70
⑮ Adjustable steering column	62	③⑫ Handbrake	69
⑯ Control lever for cruise control system	85		
⑰ Bonnet lock release	129		
⑱ Headlight range control (on vehicles with manual headlight range control)	37		
⑲ Instrument lighting	41		
⑳ Light switch	37		
㉑ Electric adjuster for exterior mirrors	41		
㉒ Electric windows	34		
㉓ Switches/warning lamps for:			
– Start/stop system	67		
– Airbag off display	124		



Note

- Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
- The information shown in the instrument cluster display depends on the vehicle equipment. A maximum of two possible versions are shown in this Owner's Manual.
- Please refer to the separate operating manual for instructions on using the infotainment system.
- It is not possible to configure settings in the CAR menu via the chorus sound system.
- The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on ⇨ page 8. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

Instruments and warning/indicator lamps

Instruments

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the driver's information centre.



Fig. 3 Overview of instrument cluster

1	SET button	12
2	Rev counter	11
3	Coolant temperature gauge*	10
4	Indicator lamps (turn signals)	38
5	Display	12
	– Warning and indicator lamps	14
	– Driver information system*	21
6	Speedometer	
7	Fuel gauge*	11
8	Reset button for trip recorder	11

 **Note**

The instrument lighting (for dials and needles) is switched on when the ignition is on and the vehicle's lights are off. The illumination of the dials and needles is automatically reduced as it becomes dark outside and is eventually switched off altogether. This function is intended to remind the driver to switch on the dipped headlights in good time.

Coolant temperature gauge*

The coolant temperature gauge 3 ⇒ page 10, Fig. 3 only works when the ignition is switched

on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

Engine cold

If the needle is in the lower range of the dial, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Normal temperature

In normal operation the needle will settle somewhere in the centre of the dial once the engine has reached operating temperature. The needle may also go further over to the right when the engine is working hard at high outside temperatures. If the needle is over to the far right on the dial and the warning lamp  appears in the instrument cluster, this means the coolant temperature is too high ⇒ page 16.

Vehicles without coolant temperature gauge

On vehicles which do not have a coolant temperature gauge, a warning lamp  ⇒ page 16 will be the sole indication if the coolant temperature is too high. Please refer to ⇒ .

! CAUTION

- If your vehicle does not have a coolant temperature gauge, apply the following rule of thumb to ensure that your engine enjoys a long service life: avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads for about 15 minutes after starting a cold engine. The amount of time the engine takes to warm up depends on the outside temperature and the type of engine. On account of their higher efficiency, diesel engines take longer to warm up than petrol engines.
- Additional lights and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
- The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Obtain professional assistance.

i Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

These engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.

Rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute.

You should select a lower gear if the engine speed drops below 1500 rpm. The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

! CAUTION

The rev counter needle ② ⇨ *page 10, Fig. 3* must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage.

**For the sake of the environment**

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise engine noise.

Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge only works when the ignition is switched on. Depending on the equipment fitted, the fuel gauge may be digital (bar display) or analogue (dial*).

When the gauge reaches the reserve zone, a red LED will light up (if the gauge is digital) and the indicator lamp  will appear ⇨ *page 19*. The red LED will flash if the fuel level is very low (if the gauge is digital).

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the **Technical data** section ⇨ *page 183*.

! CAUTION

Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. Unburnt fuel can then enter the exhaust system. This can lead to overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Mileage recorder

Fig. 4 Instrument cluster: Mileage recorder and reset button

Trip recorder/odometer

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys.

The trip recorder can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button [0.0].

The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.

Fault display

If there is a fault in the instruments, the letters DEF appear in the trip recorder display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible.

Time/date display

Depending on the equipment fitted, you can select a quartz clock, a radio-controlled clock* or a GPS-controlled clock*. On vehicles with driver information system, you can also set the time via the infotainment* system. For further details, please refer to the Operating Manual for your infotainment system*.

Switching between displays

Applies to: vehicles without driver information system

- ▶ Press the [SET] button ① to switch between the time and digital speedometer displays ⇒ page 10, Fig. 3.

Setting the time and date

- ▶ Press and hold the [SET] button ① ⇒ page 10, Fig. 3 until the hour display starts to flash.
- ▶ Press the [0.0] button ⑧ repeatedly until the display shows the correct hour.
- ▶ To set the minutes, press the [SET] button. The minutes display will flash.
- ▶ Press the [0.0] button repeatedly until the display shows the correct number of minutes.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with driver information system: Subsequently set the date in the same way.
- ▶ Press the [SET] button to confirm the setting.

Display

Applies to: vehicles without driver information system



Fig. 5 Instrument cluster: Display without driver information system

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster display shows the following (as applicable):

Ⓐ	Clock or digital speedometer ⇒ page 12
Ⓑ	Mileage and trip recorder ⇒ page 11
	Warning/indicator lamps and driver messages ⇒ page 14
	Service interval display ⇒ page 136
	Gear-change indicator ⇒ page 13
	Selector lever positions for automatic gearbox ⇒ page 71
Ⓒ	Outside temperature ⇒ page 13
	Fuel gauge ⇒ page 11

Gear-change indicator

Applies to: vehicles with gear-change indicator

This additional indicator function can help to save fuel.



Fig. 6 Instrument cluster: Gear-change indicator on vehicles without driver information system



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: Gear-change indicator recommending neutral on vehicles with driver information system

To familiarise yourself with the gear-change indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

Vehicles with manual gearbox

The display will tell you which gear you are in and whether to change up or down.

- **Shift up a gear:** The arrow to the right of the current gear points **upwards**.
- **Shift down a gear:** The arrow to the right of the current gear points **downwards**.

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

If all the conditions for a stop phase ⇒ *page 67* have been met, but the gear lever is in gear with the clutch depressed, the gear change indicator will recommend changing to **N**.

- **N:** Put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The start/stop system will automatically switch off the engine.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode ⇒ *page 74*. Only recommendations to shift up a gear will be displayed. If the arrow to the right of the current gear points **upwards**, **shift up a gear**.



CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is intended to help save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking, driving up a steep gradient or towing a trailer).



Note

The gear-change indicator in the display goes out when you press the clutch pedal.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is shown on the instrument cluster display. At temperatures below +5°C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display.

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.



WARNING

Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!



Note

You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system*.

Warning and indicator lamps

Description

The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to indicate functions or faults.

Vehicles without driver information system

Some fault warnings are accompanied by a warning tone and/or a message. The messages disappear again after a short time. Not all of the warning lamps/driver messages in the following overview may be available on your vehicle.

Vehicles with driver information system*

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message. The warning display will be accompanied by the corresponding warning chime. The messages disappear again after a short time, but you do have the option of displaying them again. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, you may be able to use the following to operate the driver information system: ⇒ page 22, *Controls on windscreen wiper lever*, ⇒ page 22, *Controls on multi-function steering wheel*.

Overview

When you switch on the ignition, some of the warning and indicator lamps light up briefly to show that the associated systems are working properly. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these warning/indicator lamps does not light up, there is a fault in the associated system.

Red warning lamps

	Brake system ✓ ⇒ page 15
	Handbrake ⇒ page 15
	Front seat belt ⇒ page 16
	Alternator ⇒ page 16

	Engine oil pressure ⇒ page 16
	Cooling system ⇒ page 16
	Electro-mechanical power steering ✓ ⇒ page 96
	Steering lock* ⇒ page 17
	Gearbox ⇒ page 76
	Bonnet* ⇒ page 17
	Door(s)* ⇒ page 17
	Boot lid* ⇒ page 17

Yellow indicator lamps

	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇒ page 17
	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC) ✓ ⇒ page 17
	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)* ⇒ page 93
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) ✓ ⇒ page 17
	Safety systems ✓ ⇒ page 17
	Tyre pressure loss indicator* ✓ ⇒ page 143
	Tyre pressure loss indicator* ⇒ page 143
	Engine management (petrol engine) ✓ ⇒ page 18
	Engine management (diesel engine) ✓ ⇒ page 18
	Emission control system ✓ ⇒ page 18

	Diesel particulate filter* ⇒ page 18
	Engine speed governing* ⇒ page 18
	Engine oil level / engine oil sensor ⇒ page 18, ⇒ page 19
	Engine oil level ⇒ page 18
	Engine oil sensor ⇒ page 19
	Engine temperature* ⇒ page 16
	Battery charge ⇒ page 16
	Fuel tank system ⇒ page 19
	Washer fluid level* ⇒ page 19
	Bulb monitor ⇒ page 19
	Dynamic headlight range control* ⇒ page 19
	Light sensor/rain sensor* ⇒ page 19
	Convenience key*/engine start ⇒ page 20
	Convenience key* ⇒ page 66
	Battery in remote control key ⇒ page 28
	Electro-mechanical power steering ✓ ⇒ page 96
	Steering lock* ⇒ page 19
	Suspension control* ⇒ page 20
	Speed warning function* ⇒ page 85

Further indicator lamps

	Turn signals ⇒ page 20
	Trailer turn signals* ⇒ page 20
	Cruise control system* ⇒ page 85
	Start/stop system* ⇒ page 67
	Start/stop system* ⇒ page 67
	Seat belt warning system* (rear seats) ✓ ⇒ page 20
	Seat belt warning system* (rear seats) ✓ ⇒ page 20
	Bonnet* ⇒ page 17
	Door(s)* ⇒ page 17
	Boot lid* ⇒ page 17
	Main beam assist* ⇒ page 39
	Main beam headlights ⇒ page 38, ⇒ page 39

(!)/(P) Brake system

If the warning lamp lights up, there is a fault in the brake system.

Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

If the warning lamp lights up and the message appears, stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level ⇒ page 133. Obtain professional assistance if necessary.

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

If the ABS indicator lamp  and ESC indicator lamp  light up together with the brake warning lamp  and this driver message appears, the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed ⇒ .

Do not drive on. Please seek professional assistance ⇒ .

Handbrake is applied

If the warning lamp  and message appear when you drive off, please release the handbrake ⇒ [page 69](#).

WARNING

- Before opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level, observe the warning information on ⇒ [page 128, Working on components in the engine compartment](#).
- If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, this could result in an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
- If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp and the ESC indicator lamp, this can mean that the control function of the ESC/ABS is not working. Input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Front seat belt

The warning lamp  lights up and does not go out until the driver's and passenger's seat belts have been fastened. When the vehicle has gathered speed you will also hear a warning chime.

Alternator/vehicle battery

Alternator fault: Battery is not being charged

There is an alternator fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay. However, you should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery. If the battery charge is insufficient, obtain professional assistance.

Low battery charge: Battery will be charged while driving

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the starting ability may be impaired.

If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.

If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine oil pressure

Switch off engine! Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇒ [page 131](#).

- If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇒ [page 131](#). Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
- If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Note

The oil pressure warning lamp is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

Cooling system

Switch off engine and check coolant level

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇒ [page 133](#).

- If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇒ [page 133](#). Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

Coolant temperature! Let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes until the warning lamp goes out.

- Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Obtain professional assistance.

Please warm up engine

Applies to certain types of engine only and indicates that the engine has not yet reached its proper working temperature.

WARNING

- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous place. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇒ *page 128, Working on components in the engine compartment.*

CAUTION

Do not drive on if the warning lamp  lights up; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage.

Steering lock

Steering defective! Do not drive vehicle!

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Do not drive on. The ignition lock will be disabled after you switch off the ignition. Obtain professional assistance.

WARNING

The vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock, because the vehicle cannot be steered.

Door, bonnet or boot lid open

If the warning lamp  or indicator lamp  lights up, check the doors and close them completely.

If the warning lamp  or indicator lamp  lights up, close the bonnet.

If the warning lamp  or indicator lamp  lights up, close the boot lid.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

If the indicator lamp  flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC or traction control system (ASR) is intervening.

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. In this case, the ESC can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the ESC system has been partially or completely switched off via the  button ⇒ *page 93.*

Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault! See owner's manual

If the indicator lamp  and the ABS indicator lamp  light up and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the anti-lock brake system or electronic differential lock. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

If the brake warning lamp  lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp and the ESC indicator lamp, this can mean that the control function of the ESC/ABS is not working. Input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Drive carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Note

For more information about the ESC and ABS systems, refer to ⇒ *page 93.*

Safety systems

If the indicator lamp  lights up or flashes, there is a malfunction in one of the safety systems.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

EPC Engine management (petrol engine)

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

If the indicator lamp  lights up, there is a fault in the engine management system.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Engine management (diesel engine)

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

If the indicator lamp  lights up when the ignition is switched on, the glow plugs are preheating.

If the indicator lamp does not light up or if it flashes while the vehicle is moving, there is a fault in the engine management system.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Emission control system

If the indicator lamp  lights up or flashes, a fault has occurred which can reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine and diesel particulate filter

 **Particulate filter: system fault. See owner's manual**

The diesel particulate filter requires regeneration. You can assist the self-cleaning function of the filter by driving as follows:

Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h for about 15 minutes in 4th or 5th gear, or with the selector lever in position S on vehicles with automatic gearbox. Keep the engine speed at about 2000 rpm. As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off. The indicator lamp will go out once the cleaning process has been completed successfully.

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommended driving speed must never lead to the driver disregarding the traffic regulations.

Note

For more information about the diesel particulate filter, refer to [⇒ page 127](#).

Engine speed governing

Max. engine speed: XXXX rpm

There is a malfunction in the engine management system. In addition, the indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster will light up. The engine speed will be governed to the speed displayed in the driver information system. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Note

On vehicles which do not have a driver information system, a message does not appear when the rev limiter is activated. The indicator lamp  will light up.

Engine oil level

 **Check oil level**

Top up the engine oil as soon as possible
⇒ page 130.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: system fault!

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Fuel tank system

Please refuel

When the indicator lamp lights up for the first time and the message appears, there are still about 7 litres of fuel left in the tank.

Tank system malfunction! Contact workshop

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the fuel tank system.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Note

For more information about filling the tank, refer to ⇒ page 126.

Washer fluid level*

Please refill washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system* ⇒ page 136.

Steering lock

Steering lock: malfunction. Contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the ignition lock.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Bulb monitor

If the indicator lamp  lights up, a bulb has failed. The message* indicates the location of the bulb.

- If the indicator lamp  also lights up, a front fog light* bulb has failed. The position of the indicator lamp matches the position on the vehicle.
- If the indicator lamp  also lights up, a rear fog light bulb has failed. The position of the indicator lamp matches the position on the vehicle.

Vehicle lights: malfunction

There is a fault with the headlights or light switch.

You should have the bulb replaced without delay.

WARNING

- Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.
- Do not change xenon* gas-discharge bulbs yourself. Incorrect handling of the high-voltage element of xenon* gas-discharge bulbs can have potentially fatal consequences.

Dynamic headlight range control

Applies to: vehicles with xenon lights

Headlight range control defective!

There is a malfunction in the dynamic headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled.

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Light sensor / rain sensor

Applies to: vehicles with light sensor/rain sensor

Automatic headlights/wipers: system fault

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action.

For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the ►

light switch is set to the **AUTO** position. You can still switch the lights on and off in the normal way with the light switch. You can also continue to use all the other wiper functions that do not use the rain sensor.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Engine start system

 **Engine start system: malfunction. Please contact workshop.**

There is a malfunction in the engine start system.

Do **not** switch off the ignition; otherwise you may not be able to switch it on again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

 **Suspension: system fault**

There is a malfunction in the suspension control system.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Turn signals and hazard warning lights

If the indicator lamp  or  flashes, the turn signals are on. If both indicator lamps flash, the hazard warning lights are on.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. You should have the bulb replaced without delay.

Note

For more information about the turn signals and hazard warning lights, refer to
⇒ *page 38*.

Trailer turn signals

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket

If the indicator lamp  flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. The trailer must be prop-

erly connected ⇒ *page 78*. If that is the case and the indicator lamp does not flash, there is a fault in the trailer system.

If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp flashes twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Rear seat belt

Applies to: vehicles with seat belt warning system (rear seats)

If a rear seat belt is buckled/unbuckled, the corresponding indicator lamp lights up briefly.

 - If the indicator lamp lights up briefly, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

 - If the indicator lamp lights up briefly, the corresponding rear seat is not occupied or the seat belt is not buckled. If the seat belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is moving, you will also hear a warning tone.

Note

For further information on the seat belts
⇒ *page 111*.

Driver information system

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with driver information system

The driver information system automatically collects, processes and displays data.



Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: Display on vehicles with multi-function steering wheel*



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: Display on vehicles without multi-function steering wheel*

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the driver information system can be operated using the controls on the windscreen wiper lever* ⇒ [page 22](#) or on the multi-function steering wheel* ⇒ [page 22](#).

If your vehicle is equipped with a multi-function steering wheel*, the information **(B)** is shown in display tabs **(A)** ⇒ [Fig. 8](#). The tabs appear as soon as you operate the control **(1)** ⇒ [page 22](#), [Fig. 11](#) on the multi-function steering wheel*.

The instrument cluster display shows the following:

(B)	Time and date ⇒ page 12
	Mileage and trip recorder ⇒ page 11
	Digital speedometer
	On-board computer ⇒ page 23
	Efficiency program ⇒ page 23
	Reduced display*
	Warning/indicator lamps and driver messages ⇒ page 14
	Warning if one of the doors, bonnet or boot lid is not closed
	Service interval display ⇒ page 136
	Cruise control system* ⇒ page 85
	Speed warning* ⇒ page 85
	Audio*
	Telephone*
	Navigation*
(C)	Outside temperature ⇒ page 13
	Main beam assist* ⇒ page 39
	Seat belt warning system for rear seats ⇒ page 20
	Gear-change indicator for manual gearbox ⇒ page 13 , ⇒ page 24
	Selector lever positions for automatic gearbox ⇒ page 70



Note

- On vehicles with driver information system, you can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. via the infotainment system*.
- For information on how to operate the audio, telephone* and navigation* functions, please refer to the separate Operating Manual for your infotainment system.

Controls

Controls on windscreen wiper lever

Applies to: vehicles with driver information system, without multi-function steering wheel

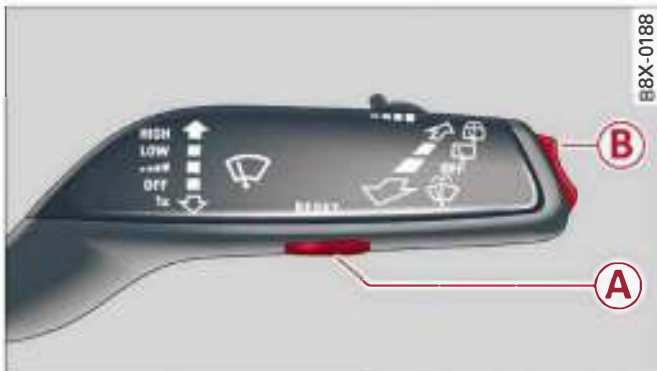


Fig. 10 Windscreen wiper lever: Operating the driver information system

How to use the controls

- Switch on the ignition. The function that was last selected will be displayed.
- Press the **RESET** button (A) to switch between on-board computer 1 and 2, the efficiency program and the cruise control system*, for example.
- To show more information further up or down the display, press the top or bottom part of the button (B).

Calling up warning/indicator lamps and driver messages again

- Press the **RESET** button (A).

Resetting values to zero

- Select a value in the desired on-board computer or the efficiency program.
- Press and hold the **RESET** button (A) for at least one second. All values in the selected on-board computer or the efficiency program will be reset to zero.

Controls on multi-function steering wheel

Applies to: vehicles with driver information system and multi-function steering wheel



Fig. 11 Multi-function steering wheel: Operating the driver information system

The display tabs (A) ⇒ page 21, Fig. 8 will appear as soon as you press the button (1) ⇒ Fig. 11 on the multi-function steering wheel.

How to use the controls

- Switch on the ignition. The function that was last selected will be displayed.
- To switch between the tabs, press the left or right side of the button (1) ⇒ Fig. 11.
- To show more information further up or down the display, scroll the thumbwheel (2) up or down.
- To confirm a selection, press the thumbwheel (2).

Calling up Car functions

- Use button (1) to select the first display tab.
- Press the button (3). The **Car functions** menu will be displayed.
- To select a menu item, scroll and press the thumbwheel (2).
- To call up a function assigned to the steering wheel button, press the button (4).

Resetting values to zero

- Select **Computer** or **Efficiency prg.** from the **Car functions** menu.
- Select a value in the desired on-board computer or the efficiency program.
- To reset the figures in the selected memory to zero, press the thumbwheel (2) for one second. ►

Assigning a function to the steering wheel button

- Select: **[CAR]** button > control button **(Car) Systems*** > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button**.

Calling up warning/indicator lamps and driver messages again

- Select the display tab marked **!**.

The tab marked **!** is only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed. Other tabs are only visible if the corresponding system is switched on.

On-board computer

Applies to: vehicles with on-board computer



Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: On-board computer memory 2 (example)

Controls on windscreen wiper lever*

- Press the **[RESET]** button **(A)** ⇒ page 22, Fig. 10 repeatedly until the on-board computer appears on the display.
- To show more information, press button **(B)**.

Controls on multi-function steering wheel*

- Call up the vehicle functions and select **On-board computer** from the menu ⇒ page 22.
- To show more information, scroll the thumbwheel **(2)** ⇒ page 22, Fig. 11.

The number **1** or **2** in the top corner of the on-board computer display shows which on-board computer is currently being displayed.

On-board computer **1** ⇒ Fig. 12 is a single journey memory. It processes the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed

within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the single journey memory, the total journey memory (on-board computer **2**) is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

You can call up the following information sequentially on the on-board computer **1** or **2**:

- Date
- Range
- Driving time
- Average fuel consumption
- Average speed
- Distance covered
- Current fuel consumption



Note

For information on the efficiency program, refer to ⇒ page 23.

Efficiency program

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program



Fig. 13 Instrument cluster: Efficiency program

Controls on windscreen wiper lever*

- Press the **[RESET]** button **(A)** ⇒ page 22, Fig. 10 repeatedly until the efficiency program appears on the display.

Controls on multi-function steering wheel*

- Press button **(3)** ⇒ page 22, Fig. 11, scroll the thumbwheel **(2)** to select **Efficiency prg.** and press the thumbwheel **(2)**.

The efficiency program can help to save fuel. It evaluates fuel efficiency data, shows a list of auxiliary equipment affecting fuel consumption ⇒ *page 24*, and suggests gear changes* ⇒ *page 24*. It also provides economy tips ⇒ *page 25* for saving fuel.

The efficiency program uses the trip and fuel consumption data from on-board computer 1. When you clear the data from the efficiency program ⇒ *page 22*/⇒ *page 22*, the values in on-board computer 1 are reset to zero.

Note

The measurement units may be different on vehicles for some markets.

Advanced gear-change indicator

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program and manual gearbox



Fig. 14 Instrument cluster: Advanced gear-change indicator



Fig. 15 Instrument cluster: Gear-change indicator recommending neutral

Important: The efficiency program  must have been called up ⇒ *page 23*.

► Using the windscreen wiper lever*: Press button  ⇒ *page 22*, *Fig. 10* repeatedly until the in-

strument cluster display shows the advanced gear-change indicator.

► Using the multi-function steering wheel*: Scroll the thumbwheel  ⇒ *page 22*, *Fig. 11* until the display shows the advanced gear-change indicator.

The advanced gear-change indicator is based on the same logic as the “regular” gear-change indicator ⇒ *page 13*. Whereas the regular gear-change indicator just suggests that you change up or down, the advanced gear-change indicator recommends a particular gear ⇒ *Fig. 14*. It also recommends putting the gearbox in neutral when appropriate.

CAUTION

The advanced gear-change indicator is intended to help save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking, driving up a steep gradient or towing a trailer).

Note

The “regular” gear-change indicator disappears from the display when the advanced gear-change indicator appears.

Energy consumers

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program



Fig. 16 Instrument cluster: Energy consumers

Important: The efficiency program  must have been called up ⇒ *page 23*.

► Using the windscreen wiper lever*: Press button  ⇒ *page 22*, *Fig. 10* repeatedly until the list ►

of auxiliary equipment appears on the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 16.

- Using the multi-function steering wheel*: Scroll the thumbwheel ② ⇒ page 22, Fig. 11 until the list of auxiliary equipment appears on the display.

The efficiency program shows a list of energy consumers currently affecting the vehicle's fuel consumption. The display shows up to three energy consumers ③. The energy consumer drawing the most power appears at the top of the list. If more than three energy consumers are switched on, the ones currently using the most power are displayed.

In addition, a scale ④ indicates the overall current fuel consumption of all energy consumers.

Economy tips

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program



Fig. 17 Instrument cluster: Example of economy tip

Economy tips are displayed if the fuel consumption increases in certain situations. By following these economy tips, you can save fuel. The tips are displayed automatically and only appear in the efficiency program. The economy tips automatically disappear again after a while.

- To clear an economy tip from the display immediately, press any of the controls on the windscreen wiper lever*/multi-function steering wheel*.

Note

- Once you have cleared an economy tip from the display, it will not appear again until the next time you switch on the ignition.

- The economy tips are not always displayed in every conceivable situation, but are deliberately spaced out over time.

Active Cylinder Management

Applies to: vehicles with Active Cylinder Management and driver information system



Fig. 18 Instrument cluster: 2-cylinder mode display

The engine shuts down two cylinders to save fuel under light-load conditions and automatically re-activates them when they are needed, the whole process being imperceptible to the occupants.

Displaying the cylinder mode

Important: The on-board computer must be displayed.

- Using the windscreen wiper lever*: Press the function selector switch ③ ⇒ page 22, Fig. 10 repeatedly until the instrument cluster display shows the current or average fuel consumption.
- Using the multi-function steering wheel*: Scroll the thumbwheel ② ⇒ page 22, Fig. 11 until the instrument cluster display shows the current or average fuel consumption.

You are driving in 2-cylinder mode when the driver message **2-cylinder mode** is displayed.

Basic conditions for 2-cylinder mode

The engine automatically runs on two cylinders when certain basic conditions are met. These include:

- Power demand is low.
- Vehicle is in a forward gear.
- Engine speed is between 1,300 and 3900 rpm.
- The selected interior temperature has been reached.
- Engine is warm.

Doors and windows

Central locking system

Description

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked via the central locking system. You can use any of the following:

- Remote control key ⇒ *page 28*
- Sensors in front door handles on vehicles with convenience key* ⇒ *page 29* or
- Interior central locking switch ⇒ *page 30*, or
- Lock on driver's door ⇒ *page 31*.

Turn signals

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked.

If the turn signals do not flash, the ignition may still be on or one of the doors or the boot lid may still be open.

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)*

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h.

The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the ignition key* is removed, the unlock button on the central locking switch is pressed or one of the interior door handles is pulled.

The Auto Lock function can be switched on and off on the infotainment system* ⇒ *page 31*.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Selecting which doors are unlocked with the remote control

When you lock the vehicle, the central locking system will lock the doors and the boot lid. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the driver's door *only*, or all the locks on the vehicle, depending on the setting you have selected on the infotainment system* ⇒ *page 31*.

Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when the remote control key is not in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations:

- The boot lid will be released again automatically if the convenience key* that was last in use is left inside the boot when the boot lid is closed ⇒ *page 33*.
- If the convenience key* that was last in use is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside.



Note

- Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
- When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop.

Set of keys

The set of keys may vary according to the equipment on your vehicle.



Fig. 19 Set of keys (example 1)

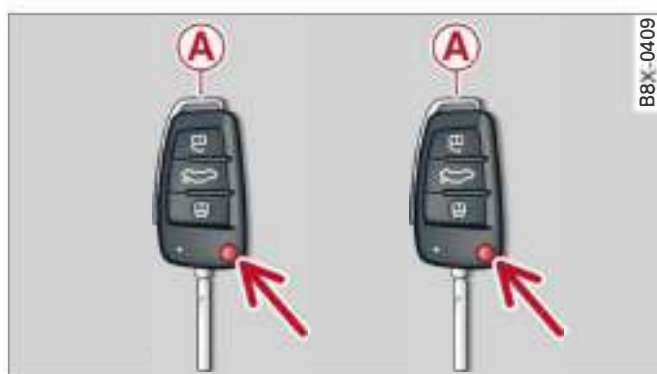


Fig. 20 Set of keys (example 2: with convenience key or anti-theft alarm system)

(A) Remote control key or convenience key*

The convenience key is a remote control key with special functions ⇒ *page 29* and ⇒ *page 64*. The remote control key will lock and unlock the car and start the engine. Press the release button ⇒ *Fig. 20 -arrow-* to make the key spring out of the handle and to fold it back in.

(B) Non-folding ignition key

The non-folding ignition key does not have a remote control. You can use the ignition key to lock or unlock the car centrally via the driver's door lock and to start the engine.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for *that* key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you. It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Number of keys

You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle on the instrument cluster display. It is displayed while you are setting the time ⇒ *page 12*. For example, **1/2** means that of two keys have been initialised for the vehicle and that you are currently using key no. 1. This feature enables used car buyers to make sure they have received all of the keys.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the engine with the key if there is another ignition key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

Data stored on remote control key or convenience key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your remote control key or convenience key*. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required.



WARNING

Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.



WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

Wait for the vehicle to come to a standstill before removing the ignition key from the lock. Otherwise the steering lock could engage suddenly, causing an accident.



Note

The function of the remote control key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range.

LED and battery in remote control key



Fig. 21 Remote control key: Opening the cover

LED on remote control key

The LED lights up when you press the buttons.

- ▶ The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- ▶ The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close*).
- ▶ If the LED does not flash, the battery in the remote control key is flat. In addition, the indicator lamp  may light up and the message **Please change key battery** may appear on the instrument cluster display*. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the battery for the remote control key

- ▶ Use a coin to lever the cover ② off the key ①
⇒ Fig. 21.
- ▶ Take off the cover in the direction indicated (arrow).
- ▶ Insert the new battery with the “+” symbol facing up.
- ▶ Press the cover back onto the key until it clicks into place.



For the sake of the environment

Used batteries must be disposed of appropriately and must not be discarded with ordinary household waste.



Note

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one in the remote control key.

Synchronising the remote control key

If the remote control fails to lock or unlock the vehicle, you can re-synchronise the system.

- ▶ Press the ①  button on the remote control.
- ▶ Unlock the driver's door within 30 seconds by turning the key in the lock.
- ▶ Press the ①  button or the ②  button.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle by remote control

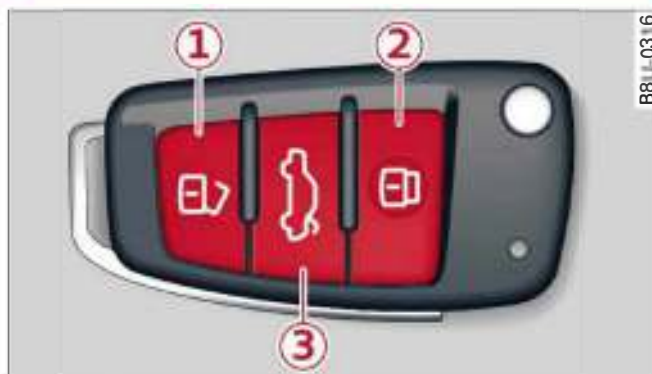


Fig. 22 Remote control key: Buttons

- ▶ To unlock the vehicle, press button ① 
⇒ Fig. 22.
- ▶ To lock the vehicle, press button ②  **once**
⇒ .
- ▶ To unlock the luggage lid, press button ③  briefly.
- ▶ To open* the boot lid, press and hold button ③  for at least one second.

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the boot lid within 30 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake. This does not apply if you press and hold button ③  for one second or longer.

If you press the button ②  once, only the driver's door and the tank flap will be unlocked. If you press the button twice, the entire vehicle will be unlocked. Also refer to ⇒ page 31.

Applies to vehicles with infotainment system:
When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the driver's door *only*, or all the locks on the vehicle, depending on the ▶

setting you have selected on the infotainment system ⇒ *page 31*.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

- Do not use the remote control key when the vehicle is out of sight.
- The vehicle can be locked only when the selector lever is in position P (vehicles with automatic gearbox).

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the key

If the central locking system should fail to operate, the driver's door can still be locked and unlocked by turning the key in the lock.



Fig. 23 Driver's door lock

- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position **A**.
- To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to position P (automatic gearbox) and turn the key to the lock position **B** **once** ⇒ .

In order to switch off the anti-theft alarm*, you must switch on the ignition within 15 seconds after opening the driver's door. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered.

Applies to vehicles with infotainment system: When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the driver's door *only*, or all the locks on the vehicle, depending on the setting you have selected on the infotainment system ⇒ *page 31*.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Note

For further functions of the remote control key/convenience key, please refer to ⇒ *page 35*, *Convenience open/close function*.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and the boot lid can be locked and unlocked without handling the remote control key.

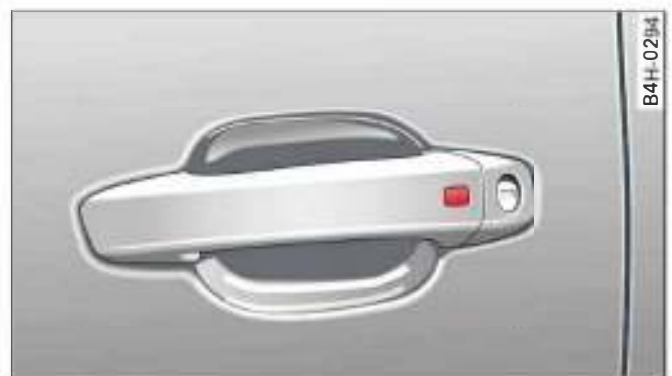


Fig. 24 Door handle: Sensor for locking and unlocking the vehicle

Unlocking the vehicle

- To unlock the driver's door or passenger's door automatically, take hold of the handle of the relevant door. The door will be unlocked automatically.
- Then pull the door handle to open the door. ►

- ▶ To open the boot, press the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ *page 33*.

Locking the vehicle

- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P; otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.
- ▶ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇒ *Fig. 24*, ⇒ ⚠. Do not take hold of the door handle while doing so.

The vehicle can be locked/unlocked from the front doors only. The remote control key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the door handle. It does not matter where you carry the key, for instance whether it is in your jacket pocket or in a briefcase.

The locking function may be affected if you grasp the door handle while the vehicle is being locked.

Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

If you press the button ②  once, only the driver's door and the tank flap will be unlocked. If you press the button twice, the entire vehicle will be unlocked. Also refer to ⇒ *page 31*.

Applies to vehicles with infotainment system:
When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the driver's door *only*, or all the locks on the vehicle, depending on the setting you have selected on the infotainment system ⇒ *page 31*.



WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.



Note

Please note the following points if the vehicle is left parked for long periods:

- To save electrical power, the proximity sensors are switched off after a few days. You will then need to pull the door handle once to unlock the vehicle, and a second time to open it.
- To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged and thus maintain the vehicle's starting ability for as long as possible, the power management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle with this convenience function.

Central locking switch



Fig. 25 Driver's door: Central locking switch

- ▶ To lock the vehicle, press the  button ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ To unlock the vehicle, press the  button.

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

- The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the *outside* (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
- The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.



WARNING

- The central locking switch is still operative when the ignition is switched off and will

automatically lock the entire vehicle when the  button is pressed.

- The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.
- Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk. Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle.

Note

Applies to vehicles with Auto Lock: The doors and the boot lid are locked automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of about 15 km/h ⇒ *page 26*. You can unlock the vehicle again via the  button in the central locking switch.

Unlocking driver's door/tank flap only

Applies to: vehicles without infotainment system

The security central locking feature allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the tank flap. All other doors and the boot lid remain locked.

Unlocking driver's door and tank flap

- ▶ Press the  button on the remote control key/ convenience key *once* or turn the key to the unlock position *once*.

Unlocking all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap simultaneously

- ▶ Press the  button on the remote control key/ convenience key *twice* or turn the key to the unlock position *twice*.

The safelock mechanism* and the anti-theft alarm* are deactivated immediately even if you unlock only the driver's door, without unlocking the other doors.

You can change the settings for the security central locking system directly on vehicles with infotainment system* ⇒ *page 31*.

Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

Applies to: vehicles with infotainment system

You can use the infotainment system to select which doors are unlocked by the central locking system.

- ▶ Select: Function selector button  > control button **(Car) Systems*** > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking***.

Unlock doors - You can select whether **all** doors or only the **driver's** door are unlocked by the central locking system. The boot lid will also be unlocked if you select **all**. If you select **driver** on vehicles with convenience key*, only one door will be unlocked (whichever door you grip by the handle).

When the **driver** setting is activated, you can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the  button on the remote control key* twice or by inserting the key in the door lock and turning it to the unlock position twice.

Long press to open windows - you can select which windows should be opened with the convenience open function ⇒ *page 35*.

Lock when driving¹⁾ - if you select **on**, the whole vehicle is locked automatically when it reaches a speed of 15 km/h.

Locking the doors manually

If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, each door will have to be locked separately.



Fig. 26 Passenger's door/rear door: Locking manually

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions.

A mechanical locking device is provided on the end faces of the front passenger's door and the rear doors.

- ▶ Pull the cap out of the opening.
- ▶ Insert the key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. Pull the interior door handle once to unlock and open the door. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle once and then opening the door from the outside.



WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ *page 32*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system



Fig. 27 End face of (open) driver's door: Button for interior monitor/tow-away protection

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when you lock the vehicle in the usual way

and is switched off again when you unlock the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system comprises the following components:

Anti-theft alarm

The alarm is triggered if the bonnet, the boot lid or any of the doors are forced open. The alarm system is armed whenever the vehicle is locked.

If you unlock the vehicle by turning the key in the driver's door lock, you should switch on the ignition within 15 seconds to prevent the alarm from being triggered. On some export versions, the alarm is triggered immediately when you open a door.

To deactivate the alarm, switch on the ignition or press the  button on the remote control key.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered if movements are detected in the interior (e.g. by animals) or if the vehicle's inclination is changed (e.g. during transport). You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by switching off the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection. To do so, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Press the  button ⇒ *Fig. 27*. The LED in the button will light up.
- ▶ If you now lock the vehicle, the interior monitor and tow-away protection will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

Safelock¹⁾

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇒ . The message **Be aware of door safelock. See owner's manual** appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism* will be activated. You can switch off the safelock mechanism* by using one of the following options: ►

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions/equipment versions.

- ▶ Press the  button on the remote control key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or:
- ▶ Turn the key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**.

The alarm is triggered if you switch off the safelock mechanism* and a door handle is then operated. To deactivate the alarm, switch on the ignition or press the  button on the remote control key.

WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.

CAUTION

If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against theft.

Note

The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the sun roof* are closed.

Boot lid

Opening and closing the boot lid



Fig. 28 Release catch on the boot lid

Opening boot lid

- ▶ To open the boot lid, press the  button on the remote control key for at least one second, or:
- ▶ Press the release catch on the boot lid.
- ▶ On vehicles with convenience key*, you can press the release catch on the boot lid (you don't need to unlock it first). The boot lid will be unlocked if an authorised remote control key is detected near the vehicle.

Closing boot lid

- ▶ Pull down the boot lid by the handle on the inside and let it drop into the latch .

WARNING

- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving - this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving; otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn into the interior.

Note

- When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the  button on the remote control key. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.
- The rear lights are built into the boot lid and disappear from view when it swings open. An extra tail light cluster is provided on each of the side posts as a safety feature for periods when the boot lid is open. If the rear lights, brake lights and/or turn signals are on, the corresponding lights in the extra tail light cluster will also be switched on while the boot lid is open .

Releasing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be released manually from the luggage compartment.

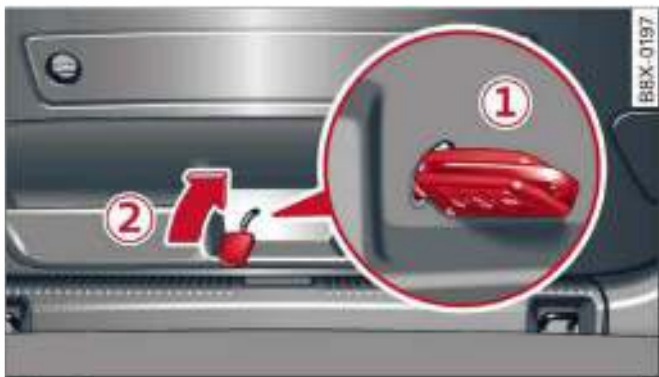


Fig. 29 Detail of inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

- Insert the key into the slot on the inside of the boot lid, as shown in ①.
- Pull the key in the direction of the arrow ② until the boot lid can be opened.

Child lock

The child locks prevent the rear doors being opened from the inside.



Fig. 30 Rear door: Child lock

- To activate/deactivate the interior door handle, open the corresponding rear door and use the car key to turn the key-operated switch in the direction of the arrow (or in the opposite direction) ⇒ Fig. 30.

When the child lock is engaged, the inside door handle will not function, and the door can only be opened from the outside.

⚠ WARNING

Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries.

Electric windows

Controls

The driver can operate all the electric windows.



Fig. 31 Driver's door: Controls for electric windows

All electric windows have two-stage switches:

Opening/closing the windows

- Press/pull the switch briefly to the second stop: the window will automatically open/close all the way. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

Switches for electric windows

- ① Front left window
- ② Front right window
- ③ Rear left window*
- ④ Rear right window*
- ⑤ Safety switch*

Safety switch

When the safety switch* ⑤ is activated, the symbol  in the switch is lit. The window switches in the rear doors are deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

- Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle - even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows - this could lead to injuries. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
- Always be careful when closing the windows. Careless use of the electric windows can cause severe injuries.
- When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that nobody is inside the vehicle, as the windows cannot be opened from the inside in an emergency.

i Note

The windows can be operated for about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.

Convenience open/close function

All the windows and the panorama sun roof can be opened and closed together.*

Convenience open function

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the remote control key until all the windows have reached the desired position and the panorama sun roof* is open, or
- ▶ Turn the key in the driver's door lock to the unlock position and hold it there until all the windows and the panorama sun roof* have reached the desired position.

Convenience close function

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the remote control key until all the windows and the panorama sun roof* are closed ⇒ , or
- ▶ Turn the key in the driver's door lock to the lock position and hold it there until all the windows and the panorama sun roof* are closed.

Convenience close function with convenience key*

- ▶ Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the front door handle until all the windows and the panorama sun roof* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

This function can be switched on/off via the infotainment system ⇒ *page 31*.

⚠ WARNING

- Take care when closing the windows and the panorama sun roof*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should only use the remote control key to open and close the windows and panorama sun roof* within about 2 metres of the vehicle. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the panorama sun roof* when pressing the  button to close them. The windows and sun roof stop moving as soon as the  button is released.

What to do after a malfunction

You can reactivate the one-touch open and close function if it fails to operate.

- ▶ Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.
- ▶ Release the switch and then pull it again for at least one second.

Panorama sun roof**Description**

Applies to: vehicles with panorama sun roof



Fig. 32 Detail of headliner: Button for panorama sun roof ▶

The switch operates in two stages. Whenever the switch is pressed or pulled to the second stage, the sun roof automatically opens or closes all the way. The sun roof will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.

A Tilting open and closed

- ▶ To tilt the sun roof fully open, briefly press the switch to the second position.
- ▶ To close the sun roof completely, briefly pull the switch downwards to the second position or briefly slide the switch forwards to the second position ⇒ .
- ▶ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the sun roof has reached the desired position.

B Opening and closing

- ▶ To slide the sun roof fully open, briefly slide the switch backwards to the second position.
- ▶ To close the sun roof completely, briefly slide the switch forwards to the second position or briefly pull the switch downwards to the second position ⇒ .
- ▶ To set an intermediate position, press the switch forwards/backwards to the first position until the sun roof has reached the desired position.

A wind deflector incorporated in the panorama sun roof adapts automatically to suit the position of the sun roof. This feature minimises wind noise in all roof positions.

The panorama sun roof can be operated for about ten minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The switch is deactivated immediately when one of the front doors is opened.

Sun blind

The sliding sun blind can be opened and closed manually in any position.



CAUTION

You should always close your panorama sun roof when leaving the car. Sudden rain could seriously damage your car's interior equipment, especially the on-board electronic systems.



Note

- Details on the convenience open/close function ⇒ *page 35*.
- The panorama sun roof cannot be opened at temperatures below -20°C.

Closing the panorama sun roof manually

Applies to: vehicles with panorama sun roof

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the panorama sun roof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it.

- ▶ After the panorama sun roof* opens automatically, pull and hold the corresponding switch ⇒ *page 35, Fig. 32* within 5 seconds until the roof is closed.

If you release the switch before the panorama sun roof is fully closed, it will open again automatically.



WARNING

Take care when closing the panorama sun roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 33 Dashboard: Light switch



Fig. 34 Dashboard: Light switch with headlight range control

Light switch ☀

Turn the switch to the appropriate position. The ⌂ symbol lights up when the lights are on.

O - Lights off. On vehicles for some markets the daytime running lights* are switched on when the light switch is in this position and the ignition is switched on.

AUTO* - The automatic headlights switch on (and off again) automatically according to the ambient light conditions (for instance at dusk, in the rain or in a tunnel). On vehicles with integrated daytime running lights*, the daytime running lights or the dipped headlights are switched on automatically, depending on the ambient light level.

⌂ - Side lights

≡ - Dipped headlights

⌂ - Front fog lights*. Turn the light switch to ⌂ (side lights) or ≡ (dipped headlights). Then pull the light switch out to the first position.

⌂ - Rear fog light. Turn the light switch to ⌂ (side lights) or ≡ (dipped headlights). Then pull the light switch out to the second position.

Headlight range control ⌂

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled when the vehicle is heavily laden.

On vehicles with xenon headlights*, the headlight beam settings are adjusted automatically (even during braking and acceleration).

On vehicles with halogen headlights, the thumbwheel ⇌ Fig. 34 must be used to adjust the headlight beam settings:

O - One or two front occupants, luggage compartment empty

I - All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty

II - All seats occupied, luggage compartment loaded

III - Driver only, luggage compartment loaded



WARNING

- The automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on manually when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights ≡ in these conditions and when driving after dark.
- To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with statutory regulations.
- Observe all relevant statutory requirements when using the lighting systems described here.

Note

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is located in the mounting for the interior mirror. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.
- A buzzer will sound if you remove the ignition key and open the door when the exterior lighting is on.
- On vehicles for some markets, the rear lights remain off when the daytime running lights are switched on.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This phenomenon has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
- If you are towing a trailer or caravan equipped with a rear fog light on a vehicle with a **towing bracket** obtained from Audi Genuine Accessories and installed by a qualified workshop, only the rear fog light on the trailer or caravan will light up.
- Frequent short trips at night place a heavy load on the battery when the coming home/leaving home function is activated. We recommend occasional longer trips or the use of a battery charger to ensure that the battery is sufficiently charged ⇒ *page 135*.

Turn signal and main beam lever

The turn signal lever also operates the main beam headlights, parking lights and headlight flasher.

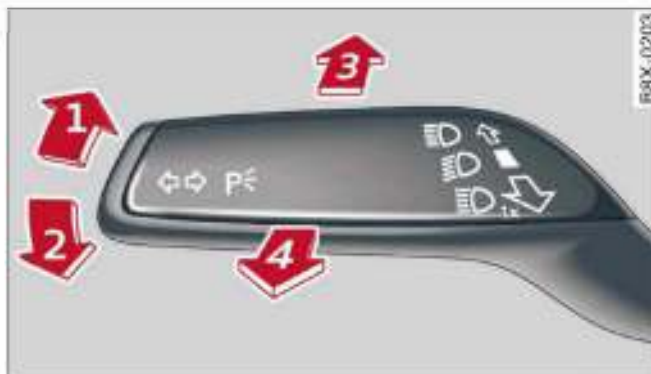


Fig. 35 Turn signal and main beam headlight lever

Turn signals and parking lights

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The parking lights will be switched on if you do this with the ignition switched off.

- ① - Turn signals/parking lights (right side)
- ② - Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times.

Main beam and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the appropriate position.

- ③ - Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist* ⇒ *page 39*)
- ④ - Main beam headlights off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster.



WARNING

The main beam can dazzle other drivers. Risk of accident! Never use the main beam headlights or the headlight flasher if they could dazzle other drivers.



Note

A buzzer will sound if you open the door when the parking light is on.

Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist

The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.

Activating the main beam assist

Important: The light switch must be set to AUTO.

- Briefly press the lever forwards **3** ⇒ page 38, Fig. 35 to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will be switched on/off automatically. In addition, an indicator lamp  will light up when the main beams are switched on.

Switching the main beams on/off manually

If the main beams are not switched on or if the headlights are not dipped as expected, you can control the dip function manually:

- To switch on the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards **3**. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- To dip the headlights manually, pull the lever towards you **4**. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- Pull the lever towards you **4** to flash the headlights when the main beam assist is activated. The main beam assist will remain activated.

Driver messages in the instrument cluster display

Main beam assist: system fault

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually.

Main beam assist: currently unavailable. No camera view

The camera vision is impaired, e.g. by stickers or dirt.

The sensor is located between the interior mirror and the windscreen. Do not affix any stickers on this section of the windscreen.



WARNING

The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. In the following situations manual intervention may be necessary:

- Hazardous weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain and snow or water splashes
- Roads on which oncoming traffic is partially concealed (e.g. on motorways)
- Indiscernible road users (e.g. cyclists with insufficient lighting or vehicles with dirty rear lights)
- Tight corners, steep hill crests or valleys
- Poorly lit towns
- Highly reflective objects, such as road signs
- Windscreen misted up, dirty, frosted or covered by stickers in front of the sensor

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

You can change the settings for these functions on the infotainment system.*

- Select: Function selector button  > control button (Car) Systems* > Vehicle settings > Exterior lighting.

Coming home, leaving home*

The coming home function lights up the area round the vehicle after dark when the ignition has been switched off and the driver's door opened. To activate this function, select **Lights when getting out > on**.

The leaving home function lights up the area round the vehicle after dark when the vehicle is unlocked. To activate this function, select **Lights when unlocking > on**.

The coming home and leaving home functions are operational after dark when the light switch is set to **AUTO**.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

Hazard warning lights



Fig. 36 Dashboard: Switch for hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights are used to make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- Press the switch  to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically¹⁾.

You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Interior lights

Interior lights



Fig. 37 Headliner: Front interior lights (example)



Fig. 38 Headliner: Rear interior lights (example)

Press the corresponding switch:

 - Interior lights on/off **(B)**.

 - Courtesy lighting on/off **(C)**. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

 - Reading lights* on/off **(A)**.

Your interior lights may differ from the illustrations, depending on the equipment in your vehicle.

Background lighting

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting can be adjusted via the infotainment system.*

- Select the following in the infotainment system*: Function selector button **[CAR]** > control button **(Car) Systems*** > **Vehicle settings** > **Background lighting**.

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions.

The background lighting will be switched on when you switch on the headlights with the ignition on.

Instrument lighting

The background lighting of the instruments and the display can be adjusted as required.*



Fig. 39 Instrument lighting

- Turn the thumbwheel up or down to reduce or increase the brightness level.

Note

The needles and the dials in the instrument cluster are illuminated when the ignition is on and the dipped headlights are off. The illumination is automatically reduced as it becomes dark outside and is eventually switched off altogether. This function is intended to remind the driver to switch on the dipped headlights in good time.

Clear vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 40 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the appropriate position:

↔ - To adjust the exterior mirror (left or right side). Move the knob in the desired direction.

☀ - To heat* the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

↩ - To fold in the exterior mirrors*.

Tilt function* for front passenger's exterior mirror

The mirror is tilted slightly to provide a better view of the kerb when parking backwards. This feature only works when the knob is in the position for adjusting the mirror on the passenger side.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by moving the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror returns to its original position as soon as you drive forwards at over 15 km/h or switch off the ignition.

WARNING

Convex* or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must first be fully retracted with the electric control. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior mirrors* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power control.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Anti-dazzle setting

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

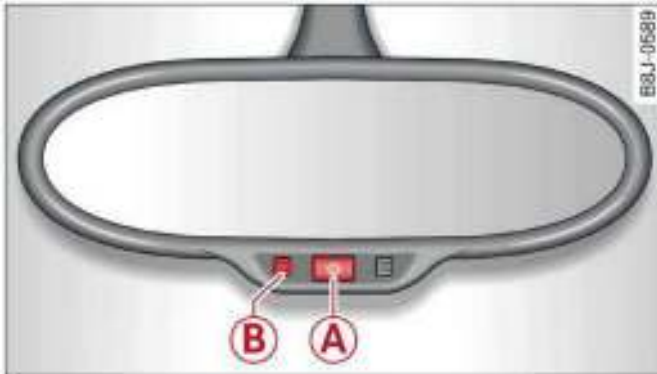


Fig. 41 Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror*

- Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror*

- Press switch **A** to activate/deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the mirror. If the indicator lamp **B** is lit, the interior mirror will darken when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if needed.

CAUTION

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet

sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.
- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Sun visors

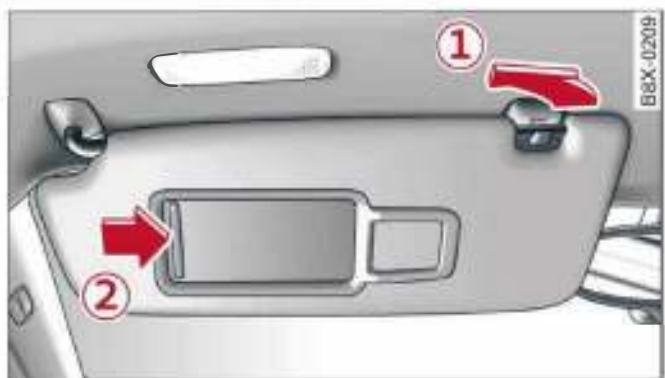


Fig. 42 Driver's side: Sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of their mountings and turned towards the doors **1**.

The light* for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover **2**.

When you fold down the sun visor, you will find a clip for holding parking permits, etc.

Windscreen wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers



Fig. 43 Windscreen wiper lever: Operating the windscreen wipers



Fig. 44 Windscreen wiper lever: Operating the rear wiper

Move the windscreen wiper lever to the appropriate position:

⑥ - Wipers off

① - Intermittent wipe. Move switch **A** to the left or to the right to increase or reduce the wiper delay interval. If your vehicle is equipped with the rain sensor*, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain as long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch **A** is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen.

② - Slow wipe

③ - Fast wipe

④ - Single wipe

⑤ - Wash/wipe. The screen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position **⑤**.

again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

Headlight washers*. The headlight washer system* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position **⑤**.

⑥ - Rear wipe. The rear window is wiped approximately every 4 seconds.

⑦ - Rear wash/wipe. The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position **⑦**.



WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇒ *page 44, Changing the windscreen wiper blades*.



CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position **⑥**) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Note

- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor*. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
- The windscreen washer jets are heated* when the ignition is switched on if the outside temperature is low.
- If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades if the wipers leave smearing on the glass. Use a soft cloth and glass cleaning solution.

Windscreen wipers

- ▶ Set the wiper arms to the service position
⇒ page 44.
- ▶ Lift the wiper arms away from the glass.

Rear window wiper

- ▶ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.

WARNING

Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view
- risk of accident!

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

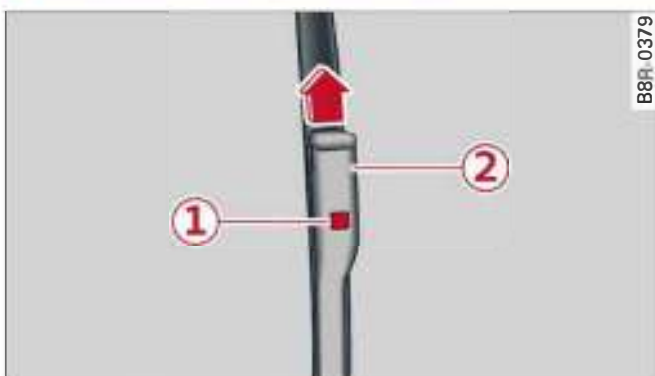


Fig. 45 Removing the wiper blades

Service position / wiper change position

- ▶ Switch the ignition on and then off again and move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④
⇒ page 43, Fig. 43 within 10 seconds. The

windscreen wipers will move into the service position.

- ▶ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and operate the windscreen wiper lever.

Taking off the wiper blade

- ▶ Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▶ Press the release button ① on the wiper blade
⇒ Fig. 45. Keep hold of the wiper blade while doing so.
- ▶ Take off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Fitting the wiper blade

- ▶ Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm ②. You should hear it engage in the wiper arm.
- ▶ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the glass.
- ▶ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and operate the windscreen wiper lever.

WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

CAUTION

- Do NOT lift the wipers off the windscreen unless they are in the service position. Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
- Never move your vehicle or operate the windscreen wiper lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.

Note

You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.

Changing the rear wiper blade



Fig. 46 Rear window wiper: Taking off the wiper blade

Taking off the wiper blade

- ▶ Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- ▶ Take hold of the wiper blade below the centre and pull the blade and its mounting out of the retainer in the direction of the -arrow-
⇒ Fig. 46. Keep hold of the wiper arm while doing so.

Fitting the wiper blade

- ▶ Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- ▶ Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.



WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

Seats and storage

General notes

WARNING

You will find important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers on ⇒ *page 100, Safe driving*.

Front seats

Adjusting seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment

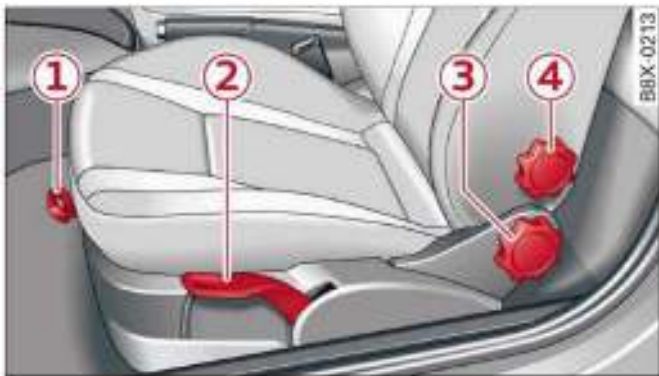


Fig. 47 Front seats: Manual adjustment

- ① - Seat forwards/backwards: Lift the lever and move the seat.
- ② - Seat height: Pull/press the lever.
- ③ - Backrest angle: Turn the knob.
- ④ - Lumbar support*: Turn the knob.

WARNING

- Never adjust the front seats when the vehicle is moving - this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled use of the seat adjustment can cause injuries.
- Do not drive with the backrests of the front seats reclined too far as otherwise the seat belt and airbag could fail to restrain the wearer properly in an accident, possibly leading to injury.

Folding the backrest down/returning it to its upright position

Applies to: vehicles with easy entry function

The easy entry function facilitates access to the rear seats.



Fig. 48 Driver's seat: Unlocking backrest



Fig. 49 Driver's seat: Tipping backrest back

Tipping the front backrests forward

- ▶ Push the lever ① ⇒ Fig. 48 upwards.
- ▶ Fold down the backrest ②.
- ▶ Push on the lower area of the backrest to slide the seat forwards.

Returning front backrests to an upright position

- ▶ Fold the backrest back up ③ ⇒ Fig. 49.
- ▶ Push the seat back as far as it will go ④.

The seat will then return to the position it was in before using the easy entry function.

WARNING

- For safety reasons the front seat backrests must be locked while driving.
- When using the easy entry function, always slide the seat all the way back to ensure that it locks in position. Do not drive the vehicle

unless the seat is properly locked in position.

i Note

If the seat does not lock properly in position after using the easy entry function, slide the seat all the way back as far as the stop. Then adjust the seat position as desired.

Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest

The centre armrest is adjustable and contains a storage compartment.

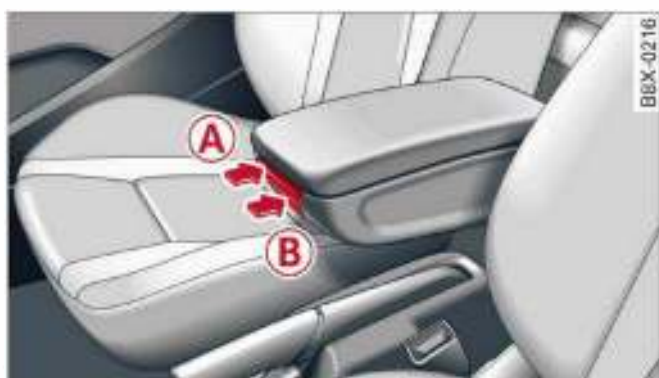


Fig. 50 Armrest between driver's seat and front passenger's seat

Adjusting armrest

- Fold the armrest all the way down to move it into its home position.
- To move the armrest further down, press button **(B)**. When the armrest is folded all the way down, you can click it up through several stops as far as the home position.

Opening storage compartment

- Pull up the catch **(A)**.

Head restraints

Front head restraints

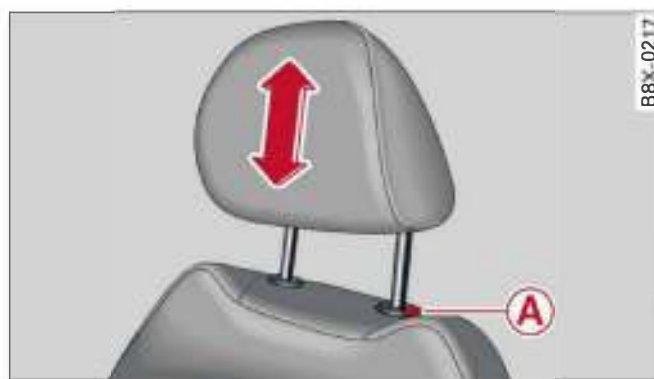


Fig. 51 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head. If this is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint as near as possible to this position.

- Grip the sides of the head restraint with both hands and slide it up or down until you feel it click into place.



WARNING

Please observe the safety warnings
⇒ page 102, *Correct adjustment of head restraints.*

Rear head restraints

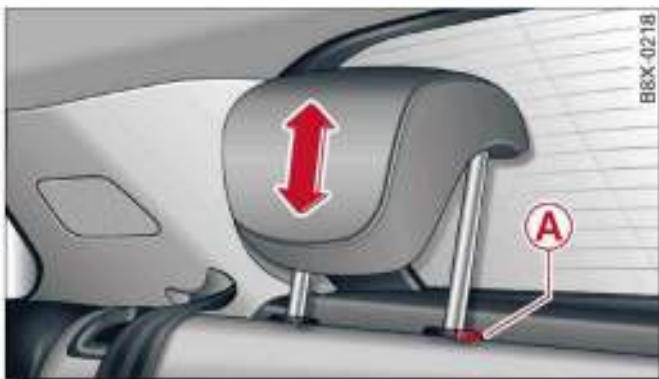


Fig. 52 Rear outer head restraint: Release point

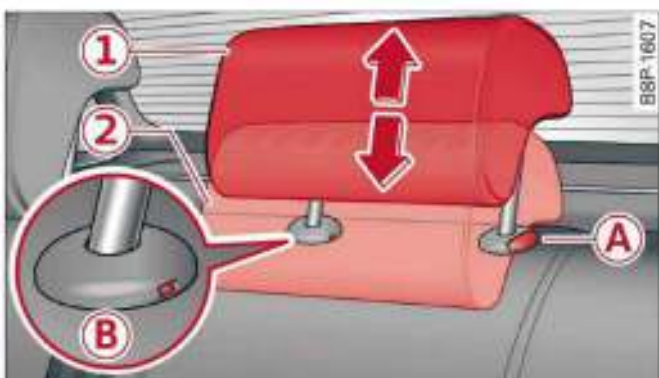


Fig. 53 Rear inner head restraint: Release point

Before carrying passengers on the rear seats, pull the head restraints on the occupied seats all the way up ⇒ ⚠.

Adjusting head restraints

- ▶ To raise the head restraint, take hold of it on both sides and move it all the way up until you feel it click into place in position ① ⇒ Fig. 53.
- ▶ To lower the head restraint, press button ① and slide the head restraint downwards to position ②.

Removing head restraints (outer)

- ▶ Fold down the backrest ⇒ page 51.
- ▶ Push the head restraint upwards as far as it will go.
- ▶ Press button ① and at the same time pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Push the backrest up until it engages securely ⇒ ⚠ in *Extending the luggage compartment* on page 51.

Removing head restraint (inner)*

- ▶ Take the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit.

- ▶ Push the head restraint upwards as far as it will go.
- ▶ Press the button ① ⇒ Fig. 53 and at the same time pull out the head restraint upwards as far as the stop.
- ▶ Insert the screwdriver in the opening ② and at the same time pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇒ ⚠.

Installing head restraints

- ▶ Fold down the backrest ⇒ page 51.
- ▶ Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place. It should no longer be possible to pull the head restraint out of the backrest.
- ▶ Press button ① and push the head restraint downwards.
- ▶ Push the backrest up until it engages securely ⇒ ⚠ in *Extending the luggage compartment* on page 51.

⚠ WARNING

- Please observe the safety warnings ⇒ page 102, *Correct adjustment of head restraints*.
- Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child seat ⇒ page 105. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child seat. Travelling with the head restraints removed or not raised increases the risk of severe injuries.

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray



Fig. 54 Centre console: Front ashtray

The ashtray is inserted in the centre console and can be placed on either the driver's or front passenger's side. Lift the lid to open the ashtray. Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it (e.g. after emptying it).

WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with cigarette lighter



Fig. 55 Centre console: Cigarette lighter

- ▶ Press in the cigarette lighter.
- ▶ When the cigarette lighter springs out, pull it out completely.

The cigarette lighter should only be used as a power source in exceptional circumstances, e.g. for the compressor of the tyre repair kit*.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

Electrical socket

Applies to: vehicles with electrical socket

Electrical equipment can be connected to the 12 Volt socket.



Fig. 56 Centre console: Electrical socket



Fig. 57 Side trim in luggage compartment: 12 Volt socket*

- ▶ Pull the cap¹⁾ off the socket ⇒ Fig. 56, or
- ▶ Open the cover of the socket in the luggage compartment* ⇒ Fig. 57.
- ▶ Insert the plug of the electrical appliance into the socket.

Electrical equipment can be connected to the 12 Volt socket. The appliances connected to the socket must not exceed a power rating of 120 W.

WARNING

The electrical sockets and any appliances connected to them will operate only when the ignition is switched on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

¹⁾ Refit the cap when you are finished using the socket.

CAUTION

Always use the correct type of plugs to avoid damaging the sockets.

Note

- Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off will drain the battery.
- Do not attempt to charge the battery of your vehicle using a small battery charger of the type that is connected to the electrical socket in the vehicle.

Storage

Cup holders



Fig. 58 Detail of the rear seat bench: Rear cup holder

Your vehicle has cup holders in the front centre console, in the door trim and on the rear seat bench* ⇒ Fig. 58.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to e.g. the electrical equipment or the seat covers.

Glove box

The lockable* glove box is equipped with a light.



Fig. 59 Glove box

- ▶ To open the glove box, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 59.
- ▶ To close the glove box, push the lid upwards until it engages.

The CD-ROM player* for the Audi Navigation System* is located in the glove box. Please refer to the separate operating instructions provided for these units.

WARNING

To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep the glove box lid closed when driving.

Further storage compartments

You will find further storage compartments* and retainers at various points in the vehicle:

- Storage compartment above centre air outlets in dashboard (on vehicles without infotainment system).
- Hinged compartment at front end of front left seat. This compartment can hold objects weighing up to 1.5 kg.
- Pen holder in lid of glove box.
- Coat hooks on pillar behind driver's and front passenger's doors.
- Tensioning strap on the left side of the luggage compartment. ▶

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure that any items of clothing hanging from the coat hooks do not obstruct your view to the rear.
- Only use the coat hooks for light items of clothing and make sure that there are no heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not use clothes hangers to hang up the clothing, as this could interfere with the function of the head-protection airbags.

Luggage compartment

General notes

⚠ WARNING

Please refer to the important safety notes on ⇒ page 108.

Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover blocks the view into the luggage compartment.



Fig. 60 Open boot lid with luggage compartment cover

Removing

- ▶ Detach the cords ①.
- ▶ Press the luggage compartment cover out of the left mounting ② and pull it away towards the left.
- ▶ Take out the cover ③.

Installing

- ▶ To install the luggage compartment cover, hold it almost completely upright, keeping the lower edge straight behind the backrest.
- ▶ Rest the luggage compartment cover loosely on the mountings and fold it down.

- ▶ Press the luggage compartment cover into the mountings on both sides.
- ▶ Attach the cords to the boot lid ① ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- The luggage compartment cover must always be fixed properly – risk of accident!
- The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could cause injury in an accident or if the brakes are applied suddenly.

Extending the luggage compartment

The backrests can be folded down separately or together.



Fig. 61 Backrest: Release lever (example of left side)

Folding down backrest

- ▶ Slide the head restraint(s) downwards ⇒ page 48.
- ▶ Press the release lever ① ⇒ Fig. 61 in the direction indicated (arrow).
- ▶ Fold down the backrest.

Returning backrest to an upright position

- ▶ Push the backrest up until it engages securely ⇒ ⚠. The red marking on the tab ② should no longer be visible when the backrest is properly secured.

⚠ WARNING

The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.

! CAUTION

- If you need to adjust the front seats when the rear backrest is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
- When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for the outer rear seats are not caught up and damaged. It is also important to remove any other objects from the rear seats to avoid damaging the backrest when folding it forwards.

Fastening rings

Applies to: vehicles with fastening rings



Fig. 62 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

- Use the fastening rings to secure the load -arrows- ⇒ Fig. 62.
- Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 109.

Stretch net/storage net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

The stretch net can be used to secure and hold light items in the luggage compartment.



Fig. 63 Luggage compartment: Stretch net attached



Fig. 64 Luggage compartment: Storage net attached

Stretch net

- To secure the stretch net, hook each of the four plastic retainers into its corresponding fastening ring -arrows- ⇒ Fig. 63.

Storage net

- To secure the storage net, hook the two plastic retainers into the fastening rings **B** ⇒ Fig. 64 and attach the loops **A** ⇒ Fig. 63 to the retaining hooks **C**.

! WARNING

The storage net will hold a maximum weight of 5 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

Retaining hook



Fig. 65 Luggage compartment: Retaining hook (example of right side)

The retaining hook can be used to prevent light bags from falling over in the luggage compartment.

! WARNING

The **retaining hook** must also only be used for light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

Bag

Applies to: vehicles with removable bag

The bag can be used to transport long items (such as skis or snowboards).

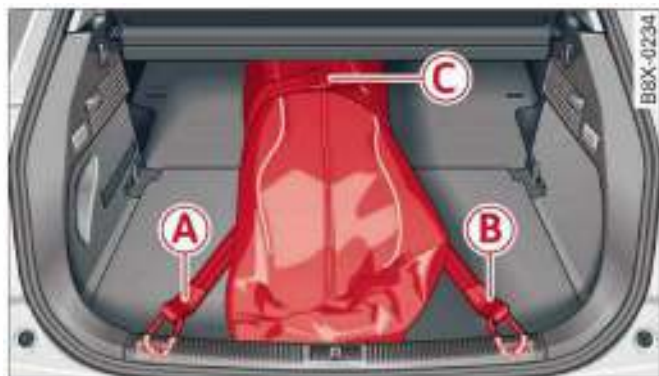


Fig. 66 Luggage compartment: Securing the bag

Loading

- ▶ Unlock both backrests ⇒ page 51.
- ▶ Working from the luggage compartment, push the bag through the opening. The zip should point towards the rear of the vehicle ⇒ !.

Securing the bag

- ▶ Hook each of the attachments on the two fastening belts (A) and (B) into the corresponding rear fastening ring ⇒ Fig. 66.
- ▶ Tighten the fastening belt (C).

! WARNING

- The bag must be secured in place with the fastening belt after it has been loaded.
- Make sure that all objects transported in the vehicle with the backrest folded down are secured. They can be catapulted through the passenger compartment in case of a sudden braking manoeuvre – risk of injury!

i Note

- If you are transporting skis or snowboards, pull the fastening belt (C) tight between the bindings.

- Place skis in the bag with their tips facing forwards, snowboards and ski poles with their tips facing backwards.
- Fold up the bag only when it is dry.

Roof carrier

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier

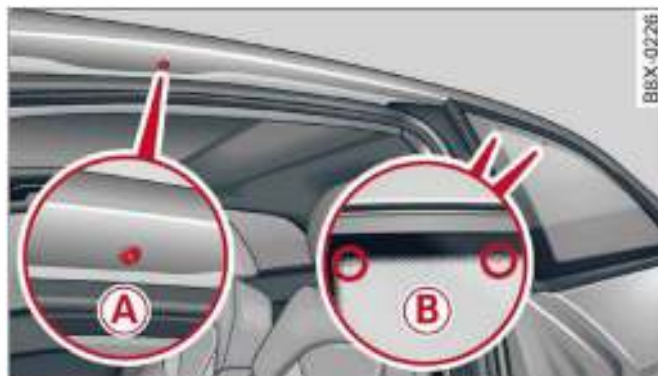


Fig. 67 A1/S1: Attachment points for carrier units



Fig. 68 A1 Sportback/S1 Sportback: Attachment points for carrier units

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- Only use roof carrier cross bars designed for your vehicle. The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Additional elements/carrier systems are needed in order to transport luggage and sports equipment. We recommend using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
- The feet of the roof carrier cross bars must be attached at the points provided on the roof ⇒ Fig. 67. The attachment points (A) are only visible when the doors are open; the attachment points (B) are marked by arrows on the top edge of the side window.
- You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight ▶

and roof load for your vehicle ⇒ *page 183*. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maximum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

WARNING

- Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
- The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds - risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.

CAUTION

- When fitting the roof carrier, take care to avoid permanently damaging the decals* in the area of the support bracket.
- Please take care that the boot lid and panorama sun roof* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.

For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more fuel. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Heating and cooling

Heating system/air conditioner

Description

One of the following systems may be fitted, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

- Heating/ventilation system* or
- Manual air conditioner or
- Automatic air conditioner*

The **heating and ventilation system*** heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The **air conditioner*** additionally cools and dehumidifies the air coming into the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the panorama sun roof* closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

Pollution filter

The pollution filter removes impurities, such as dust and pollen, from the air.

Supplementary heater*

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The vehicle interior warms up more quickly with the supplementary heater.

Applies to vehicles with heating/ventilation system or manual air conditioner: When the rotary control for selecting the temperature is set to at least 85 % heat , the supplementary heater is controlled automatically.

Applies to vehicles with automatic air conditioner: The system automatically switches the supplementary heater on temporarily as required, depending on the setting on the vehicle heating system.

Applies to vehicles with infotainment system: The supplementary heater function can be

switched on/off. Select the following on the infotainment system: Function selector button  > control button **Systems / Car systems*** > **AC** > **Suppl. heater**.



For the sake of the environment

- Switch off the cooling mode on the air conditioner* by pressing the A/C button if you wish to save fuel. This will also reduce emissions. The LED in the button will go out when the air conditioner is switched off.
- On vehicles with efficiency program*, you can see how your fuel consumption is being affected by auxiliary equipment and have tips for improved fuel economy displayed [⇒ page 23](#).
- Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: The automatic supplementary heater function can be switched off on the infotainment system [⇒ page 55](#).



Note

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- Condensation can drip off the air cooling system* and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
- If you notice, for instance, that the seat* or rear window heating is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the power management function. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.



Note

The air conditioner contains fluorinated greenhouse gases. Further information is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment¹⁾.

¹⁾ May vary in different countries

Heating/ventilation system or manual air conditioner

Applies to: vehicles with heating/ventilation system or manual air conditioner



Fig. 69 Centre console: Controls for the heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner

The functions can be switched on and off using the buttons and controlled using the rotary controls. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

Manual air conditioner*

For a comfortable climate inside the vehicle using the air conditioner:

- In the summer, adjust the temperature to just a few degrees below the outside temperature
- Do not turn the blower up too high
- Do not point the air outlets directly at the occupants

A/C Cooling mode*

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is not cooled and therefore not dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is

switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

● / ● Temperature

The left rotary control can be used to adjust the amount of heat as required.

⚙ Blower

You can manually adjust the blower speed as required using the central rotary control. You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. To demist the windows, we recommend that you increase the blower speed and set the control to .

/ / / Air distribution and air outlets

The air distribution can be adjusted with the right rotary control. A setting between  and  usually provides a comfortable environment. ►

At the  setting, the windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. The air recirculation is switched off, but can be switched on again manually by pressing the  button.

You can regulate the air flow and control the direction of the air emerging from the round outlets in the dashboard by turning the adjuster knob and moving the grille.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up in wet weather, it's a good idea to open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior. We recommend switching on the air recirculation mode when driving through a tunnel or in traffic queues . If the air recirculation mode is already activated when you start the engine, it will be deactivated automatically after about 20 minutes.

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the control is in the defrost position .

Rear window heating

The rear window heating operates only when the engine is running, and switches off automatically after about 10 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

Seat heating*

When you press the  button, the seat heating is switched on at level 2 (the highest level). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch off the seat heating, press the button repeatedly until all the LEDs have gone out. If the seat heating is set to the second level, it will automatically switch back to the first level after about 15 minutes.



WARNING

- For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist over if the air cooling* is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.
- People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the seat heating*. These people must not use the seat heating* - risk of injury!



CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating*, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.

Automatic air conditioner

Applies to: vehicles with automatic air conditioner

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 22 °C (72 °F).



Fig. 70 Centre console: Automatic air conditioner controls

The functions can be switched on and off using the buttons and controlled using the rotary controls. The LED in the corresponding button lights up when the function is switched on.

Automatic air conditioner

The air conditioner is fully automatic, and will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the *defrost* setting).

AUTO automatic mode

The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically. The AUTO mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls.

A/C Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the A/C button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is not cooled and therefore not dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The air cooling is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

● / ● Temperature

The rotary control can be used to adjust the temperature as required. The temperature can be adjusted between about +16 °C (+60 °F) and +28 °C (+84 °F). In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output, and the temperature is not regulated automatically. ►

Blower

You can adjust the blower speed manually using the control .

You should leave the blower on at a low setting to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated. Press the AUTO button for automatic blower regulation.

Air distribution and air outlets

The buttons can be used to adjust the air distribution. Press the AUTO button for automatic air distribution.

You can regulate the air flow and control the direction of the air emerging from the round outlets in the dashboard by turning the adjuster knob and moving the grille.

To prevent the front side windows from misting up in wet weather, it's a good idea to open the side air outlets and point them to the side.

Defroster

The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the outlets below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature should be set to 22 °C or higher.

The defroster is switched off when the AUTO button is pressed.

Switching air recirculation mode on/off

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior. We recommend switching on the air recirculation mode when driving through a tunnel or in traffic queues ⇒ .

The air recirculation mode is switched off when the AUTO or  button is pressed.

If the engine is cold, the air conditioner will automatically switch to air recirculation mode when the vehicle is reversing.

Rear window heating

The rear window heating operates only when the engine is running and switches off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Seat heating*

When you press the button, the seat heating is switched on at level 2 (the highest level).

The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch off the seat heating, press the button repeatedly until all the LEDs have gone out.

The seat heating automatically switches from level 2 to level 2 after about 15 minutes.



WARNING

- For reasons of safety you should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. This mode prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle, so the windows can mist over if the air cooling is switched off. Bad visibility can cause an accident.
- People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature could burn themselves when using the seat heating*. These people must not use the seat heating* - risk of injury!



CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating*, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.



For the sake of the environment

The automatic air conditioner runs in a particularly economical mode when the efficiency setting is selected (⇒ *page 87*).

Driving

General notes

Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over a distance of 1,500 km. For the first 1,000 km the engine speed should not exceed 2/3 of the maximum permissible engine speed – do not use full throttle and do not tow a trailer or caravan. From 1,000 to 1,500 km you can gradually increase the engine rpm and road speed.

During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

How the vehicle is driven for the first 1,500 km also influences the engine quality. After this period you should continue driving at moderate engine speeds, in particular when the engine is cold. This helps to reduce wear and tear on the engine and increases the potential mileage which can be covered by the engine.

You should also avoid driving with the engine speed too *low*. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs “smoothly”. Excessively high engine speeds are prevented by an automatic rev limiter.

Avoiding damage to the car

CAUTION

Take care not to damage low-mounted parts of the car (such as the spoiler or exhaust system) on steep ramps, uneven road surfaces or roadside kerbs, etc. This applies especially to vehicles with low ground clearance and to all vehicles when fully laden.

Driving through water on roads

Please note the following in order to prevent damage to the vehicle when driving through water (e.g. on flooded roads):

- The water level must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody.
- Do not drive faster than walking pace.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, sludge, etc., the braking effect can be delayed slightly due to moisture on the discs and brake pads. Applying the brakes carefully several times will remove the moisture and restore the full braking effect.

CAUTION

- Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.
- Always switch off the start/stop system*
⇒ page 68 before driving through water.

Note

- It is advisable to check the depth at the deepest point before approaching the water.
- Do NOT stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch off the engine before you are out of the water.
- Bear in mind that waves created by oncoming traffic could exceed the permissible wading depth of your vehicle.
- Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

How to improve economy and minimise pollution

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic situation ahead, you can reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. The following section gives you some tips on lessening the impact on the environment and reducing your operating costs at the same time.

Anticipate well in advance

A car uses most fuel when accelerating. If you anticipate hazards and speed changes well in advance, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car slow down gradually **with a gear engaged**, for

instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red. This takes advantage of the engine braking effect, reducing wear on the brakes and tyres. Emissions and fuel consumption will drop to zero due to the overrun fuel cut-off.

Change gear early to save fuel

An effective way of saving fuel is to *change up quickly* through the gears. Running the engine at high rpm in the lower gears uses an unnecessary amount of fuel.

Vehicles with manual gearbox: Shift up to second gear as soon as possible. If possible, we recommend shifting up to the next gear at approx. 2,000 rpm.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox: Press the accelerator slowly and avoid using the “kick-down” feature.

Avoid driving at high speed

Avoid travelling at top speed. Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and noise levels all increase very rapidly at higher speeds. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Do not let the engine idle for longer than necessary

Engine idling periods are automatically reduced on vehicles with start/stop system*. On vehicles without start/stop system*, it is worthwhile switching off the engine at level crossings, for instance, or at traffic lights with a long red phase. The fuel saved after only 30 - 40 seconds is greater than the amount of fuel needed to restart the engine.

The engine takes a very long time to warm up when it is running at idling speed. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Regular servicing

Regular servicing can establish a basis for good fuel economy before you start driving. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of im-

proved fuel efficiency as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value. A poorly maintained engine can consume up to ten per cent more fuel than necessary.

Avoid short trips

The engine and emission control system need to reach their **proper working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses disproportionately more fuel. The engine only reaches its working temperature after about four kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

Check tyre pressures

Always make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressures ⇒ *page 139* to save fuel. If the tyre pressures are just 0.5 bar too low, this can increase the fuel consumption by as much as 5 %. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases **tyre wear** and impairs handling.

Do not use **winter tyres** all through the year; they will increase fuel consumption by up to 10 %.

Avoid carrying unnecessary loads

Every kilo of **extra weight** will increase the fuel consumption, so it is worth checking the luggage compartment occasionally to make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

The roof carrier increases the air resistance of the vehicle and should be removed when not in use. This will save about 12 % of fuel at speeds of between 60 and 75 mph.

Save electrical energy

The engine drives the alternator to generate electricity. This means that fuel consumption rises when more power is required for electrical equipment. Switch off electrical equipment when it is not needed. Electrical equipment which uses a lot of electricity includes the blower (at a high setting), the rear window heating and the seat heating*.

Steering

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

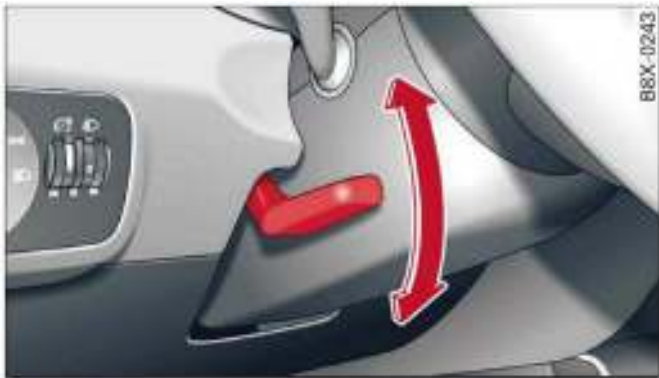


Fig. 71 Lever beneath steering column

- ▶ Push the lever down ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▶ Push the lever up again so that it engages.

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the position of the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving - this could cause an accident.
- Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident!

Starting and switching off the engine (vehicles with ignition lock)

Starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

Insert the key in the ignition lock to switch on the ignition and start the engine.

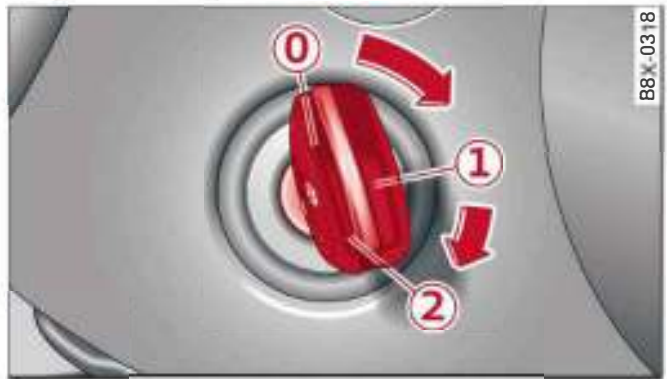


Fig. 72 Ignition lock: Ignition key positions

Switching the ignition on/off

- ▶ To switch on the ignition, turn the ignition key to position ①. Diesel engines are preheated when the ignition is switched on.
- ▶ To switch off the ignition, turn the ignition key to position ①.

Starting the engine

- ▶ Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gear lever into neutral.
- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to position P or N.
- ▶ Turn the ignition key to position ②. The ignition key automatically returns to position ①. Do not press the accelerator.

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

- ▶ The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or brake pedal (automatic gearbox) until the engine starts. The indicator lamp  lights up while the glow plugs are preheating.

The preheating time depends on the outside temperature and the temperature of the coolant. When the engine is warm, or at outside temperatures above +8°C, the glow plug indicator lamp  will come on for approximately one second. ►

This means that the engine can be started *immediately*.

If the engine fails to start immediately, switch off the starter by turning the ignition key to position ① and try again after about 30 seconds.

Start/stop system*

When you stop and the start/stop system* turns off the engine, the ignition remains on.

Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that the ignition is switched off and that the selector lever is in position P.

WARNING

- Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
- Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is moving. The steering lock would engage, and you would not be able to steer the car – risk of accident!
- Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Otherwise the engine can be started or power-operated equipment such as the electric windows can be used. This could result in serious injury.

CAUTION

Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine by running it with the car stationary. You should drive off immediately whenever possible. This will help avoid unnecessary exhaust emissions.

Note

- If it is difficult to turn the ignition key to position ①, move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until the key turns freely.

- Any noises which may be heard when the engine is started are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: After switching off the ignition, you can only withdraw the ignition key if the selector lever is in position “P” (parking lock). The selector lever cannot be moved after the ignition key has been taken out.

Switching off the engine

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

Switching off the engine

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Turn the ignition key to position ① ⇒ page 62, Fig. 72.

Engaging the steering lock

Important: The selector lever must be in position P (automatic gearbox*).

- ▶ Remove the ignition key while it is in position ① ⇒ page 62, Fig. 72 ⇒ .
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel until you hear the steering lock engage.

The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
- Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is moving. This would cause the steering lock to engage and you would no longer be able to steer the car.
- Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Otherwise the engine can be started or power-operated equipment such

as the electric windows can be used. This could result in serious injury.

- When parking, always move the selector lever to position P to prevent the vehicle from rolling back accidentally.

! CAUTION

If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

i Note

After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. This may occur for the following reasons:

- Residual heat has raised the coolant temperature.
- Direct sunlight has additionally heated up the engine compartment while the engine is warm.
- Applies to vehicles with diesel particulate filter: The emission control system is hot because of the regeneration process, even though the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.

Starting and switching off the engine (vehicles with convenience key)

Starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can use the **START ENGINE STOP** button to switch on the ignition and start the engine.



Fig. 73 Centre console: START ENGINE STOP button

Starting the engine

- ▶ Apply the handbrake firmly.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gear lever into neutral.
- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to position P or N.
- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button. The engine should start.

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

- ▶ The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the clutch pedal (manual gearbox) or brake pedal (automatic gearbox) until the engine starts. The indicator lamp  lights up while the glow plugs are preheating.

If the engine fails to start immediately, switch off the starter by pressing the **START ENGINE STOP** button once more and try again after about 30 seconds.

Switching the ignition on/off

- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button **without** pressing the clutch (manual gearbox) or brake pedal (automatic gearbox).
- ▶ To switch off the ignition, press the button again.

Start/stop system*

When you stop and the start/stop system* turns off the engine, the ignition remains on.

- If you press the **START ENGINE STOP** button at this stage, the ignition will be switched off. The engine will not be started ⇒ *page 68*.
- Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that the ignition is switched off and that the selector lever is in position P.

WARNING

Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine by running it with the car stationary. You should drive off immediately whenever possible. This will help avoid unnecessary exhaust emissions.

Note

Any noises which may be heard when the engine is started are quite normal and no cause for concern.

Switching off the engine

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button ⇒ *page 64, Fig. 73*.

Engaging the steering lock¹⁾

The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine with the **START ENGINE STOP*** button, move the selector lever to position P (on vehicles

with automatic gearbox*) and open the driver's door.

The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

Emergency Off function*

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can be switched off while the vehicle is still moving at speeds of 7 km/h and above. To switch off the engine, press the **START ENGINE STOP** button twice in quick succession or hold it in for longer than two seconds.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. The brake servo and the power steering system work only when the engine is running. You need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle when the engine is switched off. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
- Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Otherwise the engine can be started or power-operated equipment such as the electric windows can be used. This could result in serious injury.
- When parking, always move the selector lever to position P to prevent the vehicle from rolling back accidentally.

CAUTION

If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Note

After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. This may occur for the following reasons: ►

¹⁾ This function is not available on all export versions.

- Residual heat has raised the coolant temperature.
- Direct sunlight has additionally heated up the engine compartment while the engine is warm.
- Applies to vehicles with diesel particulate filter: The emission control system is hot because of the regeneration process, even though the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.

Starting the engine after a malfunction

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

If the remote control key battery is exhausted or if radio interference or a system malfunction occurs, extra steps may be necessary in order to start the engine.



Fig. 74 Steering column/remote control key: Starting the engine after a malfunction

Important: The message **No key identified. See owner's manual.** must be displayed.

- ▶ Hold the remote control key vertically against the symbol  ⇒ Fig. 74.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Press the clutch pedal.
- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the **[START ENGINE STOP]** button. The engine should start.
- ▶ Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Note

You can call up the driver message again by pressing the **[START ENGINE STOP]** button.

Driver messages

Switch off ignition. Battery is being discharged

This message appears and the buzzer sounds if you open the driver's door while the ignition is switched on.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears on vehicles with an automatic gearbox if you try to start the engine without first pressing the brake pedal.

Press clutch pedal to start engine

This message appears on vehicles with a manual gearbox if you try to start the engine without first pressing the clutch pedal.

Please engage N or P

This message will appear if you try to start or switch off the engine when the selector lever is not in N or P. The engine can then not be started or switched off.

Key not in vehicle?

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, the convenience key* was removed from the vehicle while the engine was running. If the convenience key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Shift to P, vehicle can roll away. Doors can only be locked in P.

For safety reasons, this message will appear if the selector lever of the automatic gearbox is not in position P when you switch off the ignition. Put the selector lever in position P; otherwise the vehicle can roll away and cannot be locked.

Shift to P and switch off ignition, otherwise vehicle can roll away

This message will appear if you open the driver's door when the selector lever is not in position P. Put the selector lever in position P; otherwise the vehicle can roll away.

No key identified. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is no convenience key* inside the vehicle or if the system cannot detect or identify the key. This can happen, for

example, if the radio signal from the key is *obstructed* by a metal briefcase or similar, or if the key battery is weak. Electronic equipment, such as mobile phones, can also interfere with the radio signal from the key.

The engine can still be started or stopped if this happens (please refer to ⇒ page 66).

Start/stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO₂ emissions.

In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights. The ignition remains on during this stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Basic conditions for start/stop mode

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be buckled.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The vehicle must have been moving at over 4 km/h since the last stop.
- A trailer must not be hitched up to the vehicle.



WARNING

- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off. You could lose control of the vehicle. This could result in an accident and cause serious injury.
- The brake servo and power steering only work when the engine is running. You need more strength to stop and steer the vehicle than you normally would.
- To avoid injury, make sure that the start/stop system is switched off before working in the engine compartment ⇒ page 68.



CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system
⇒ page 68 before driving through water.

Switching off / starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system



Fig. 75 Instrument cluster: Engine switched off (stop phase)

Vehicles with manual gearbox

- When the vehicle stops, put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The engine will switch off. The indicator lamp (A) will light up in the instrument cluster display, and **START (A) STOP** will appear in the driver information system*.
- The engine will start again automatically when you press the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox

- Stop the vehicle and keep your foot on the brake. The engine will switch off. The indicator lamp (A) will light up in the instrument cluster display, and **START (A) STOP** will appear in the driver information system*.
- The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake. The indicator lamp will go out.

Further information for automatic gearboxes

The engine will stop if the selector lever is in position P, D, N or S or in the tiptronic gate. If the selector lever is in position P, the engine will remain off even if you take your foot off the brake. The engine will not start again until you select another gear and take your foot off the brake.

The engine will start again if you move the selector lever to R during a stop phase.

If you do not want the engine to start when moving the selector lever through R, move the lever to P quickly.

You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

Note

Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

If the engine stalls, you can start it again directly by pressing the clutch pedal immediately.

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The on-board control system can override the start/stop function for various reasons.

Engine does not switch off

The system checks that certain conditions are met before and during each stop phase. If the indicator lamp  appears on the instrument cluster display, the engine will not be switched off in the following situations:

- The engine has not yet reached the minimum temperature required for start/stop mode.
- The interior temperature selected on the air conditioner* has not yet been reached.
- The exterior temperature is very high/low.
- Applies to vehicles with automatic air conditioner: The windscreen is being defrosted ⇒ page 59.
- The parking aid* is switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge is too low.
- The steering wheel is close to full lock or the vehicle is being steered.
- Reverse gear has just been selected.
- The vehicle is on a steep gradient.

Engine cuts in again automatically

The stop phase is interrupted in the following situations, for example. The engine cuts in automatically without intervention from the driver.

- The vehicle starts to roll (e.g. on a hill).
- Applies to vehicles with air conditioner: The interior temperature deviates from the air conditioner* setting.
- Applies to vehicles with automatic air conditioner: The windscreen is being defrosted ⇒ page 56, ⇒ page 59.
- The brake pedal is pressed several times in succession.
- The vehicle battery charge drops to an insufficient level.
- The power consumption is high.



WARNING

Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!



Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- If you select D, N or S after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again.
- In colder weather, it may take some time before the start/stop system can be used due to the increased load on the battery.

Switching the start/stop system off and on manually

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

You can switch the system off manually if you don't want to use it.



Fig. 76 Dashboard: Switch for start/stop system

- To switch the start/stop system off or on manually, press the  button. The LED in the button will light up when the system is switched off.

Note

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Driver messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system and driver information system

Automatic start/stop deactivated: restart engine manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system **cannot** start the engine again automatically. In this case, the engine must be started manually.

Start-stop system: system fault! Currently unavailable

There is a malfunction in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Handbrake

Operation

The handbrake should be applied firmly to prevent the vehicle from accidentally rolling away.



Fig. 77 Detail of the centre console: Handbrake

Applying the handbrake

- Pull the handbrake lever up all the way. The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster will light up.

Releasing the handbrake

- Pull the lever up slightly and *at the same time* press in the release button -arrow-  ⇒ Fig. 77.
- Keep the release button pressed and push the lever all the way down ⇒ . The warning lamp  in the instrument cluster will go out.

A driver message appears when the handbrake is applied with the ignition on.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake should be released all the way. If it is only partially released this will cause overheating of the rear brakes, which can impair the function of the brake system and could lead to an accident.

CAUTION

Once the vehicle has come to a standstill, always apply the handbrake firmly and then, on a manual gearbox, engage a gear, or select P on an automatic.

Parking

- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Switch the engine off.
- On a manual gearbox engage 1st gear, or on an automatic move the selector lever to P ⇒ .
- When parking on a hill or gradient, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll in to the kerb if it did start to move accidentally.

WARNING

- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. They could, for example, release the

handbrake or put the gearbox in neutral. The vehicle could then start moving and cause an accident.

Hill hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hill hold assist

The hill hold assist function makes it easier to drive away on a slope.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the seat belt must be buckled, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

The hill hold assist function makes it easier to drive away on a slope.

The system is activated when you press and hold the brake pedal for **a few seconds**.

When you release the brake pedal the braking force will be maintained for a moment in order to hold the vehicle and make it easier for you to drive away.



WARNING

- The intelligent technology in the hill hold assist function cannot defy the laws of physics. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the hill hold assist function tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The hill hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).
- If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal the vehicle could start to roll back. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the handbrake.
- If the engine should stall you must immediately press the brake pedal or apply the handbrake firmly.
- If you are driving away on a slope in stop-and-go traffic press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds before driving off. This will prevent the vehicle from rolling back unintentionally.



Note

To find out whether your vehicle is equipped with the hill hold assist function please contact a qualified workshop.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The automatic gearbox is controlled electronically. The gearbox changes up and down automatically.

When you drive at **moderate speeds** the gearbox will select the most economical shift programme. It will then change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy.

If you drive at **higher speeds** with heavy acceleration, if you open the throttle quickly, or if you use the kick-down or the car's maximum speed, the gearbox will automatically select the more "sporty" shift programmes.

If desired, you can also select the gears *manually* (**tiptronic mode**) ⇒ page 74, *Manual gear selection (tiptronic mode)*.

The S tronic is a dual-clutch gearbox. Torque is transmitted via two independent clutches. They replace the torque converter found on conventional automatic gearboxes and allow for smooth, uninterrupted acceleration of the vehicle.

Selector lever positions

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



Fig. 78 Instrument cluster: Selector lever positions

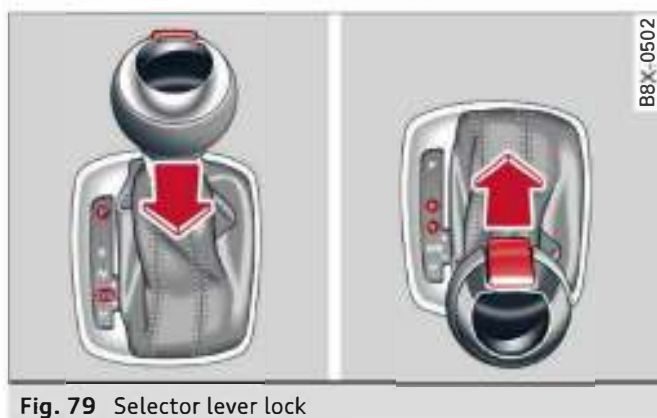


Fig. 79 Selector lever lock

The current selector lever position is shown next to the selector lever ⇒ Fig. 79 and on the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 78. In addition, the current gear is shown on the instrument cluster display.

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ If the selector lever is in position P or N, you will need to release the selector lever lock ⇒ page 71.
- ▶ Move the selector lever to the desired position. The current position is indicated on the selector gate.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, so that the vehicle is not set in motion unintentionally.

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is on. To move the selector lever out of positions P and N, the driver must apply the brake pedal and press the interlock button.

The selector lever lock only works if the vehicle is stationary or driving at speeds up to approx. 2 km/h. At higher speeds the selector lever lock in the N position is disengaged automatically.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position N (e.g. when shifting from R to D). This makes it possible, for instance, to “rock” the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position N for more than about two seconds.

If the selector lever does not lock automatically, a malfunction has occurred. In this case, the power transmission is interrupted to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally. To apply the selector lever lock again, press the brake pedal. Move the selector lever to position P or N and then select a gear.

Safety interlock for ignition key*

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

The key can only be withdrawn from the ignition lock with the ignition switched off and the selector lever in position P. When the ignition key is removed, the selector lever is locked in position P.

Interlock button

The interlock button on the selector lever handle prevents the driver from inadvertently engaging particular gears. The illustration shows the selector lever positions in which the button has to be pressed, highlighted in colour ⇒ Fig. 79.

P – Parking lock

In this position, the vehicle cannot roll away. The parking lock must only be engaged when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇒ ⚠.

The interlock button (the button in the selector lever handle) must be pressed in *and* the brake pedal must be depressed before moving the selector lever either in or out of position P.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear should only be engaged when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is idling ⇒ ⚠. ►

To move the selector lever to position R, press in the interlock button *and* at the same time press the brake pedal.

N – Neutral

In this position, the gearbox is in neutral.

To select neutral, press the button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to position N.

Press the brake pedal when moving the selector lever from N to another position if the vehicle is stationary or moving at a speed of less than 1 mph (2 km/h).

D/S – Drive/Sport (standard position for driving forwards)

In selector lever position D/S, the gearbox can be operated in either the standard drive mode (D) or in sport mode (S). To select sport mode (S), briefly pull the selector lever back. The gearbox will switch back to drive mode (D) if you pull the selector lever again. The selected driving mode is shown in the instrument cluster display.

In the standard **drive mode** (D), the gearbox automatically selects the best gear ratio. This depends on the engine load, the road speed and the driving style.

In **Sport mode** S, the gearbox makes full use of the engine power. When accelerating the gear shifts may be noticeable.

Press the brake pedal when moving the selector lever from N to D/S if the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 2 km/h ⇒ .

E – Efficiency*

In **efficiency** mode ⇒ *page 86, Audi drive select*, the gearbox selects the next gear at lower engine speeds. Earlier upshifts give improved fuel economy because the full power reserves of the engine are not used.

In this mode, an E is shown on the instrument cluster display instead of a D ⇒ *Fig. 78*.



WARNING

- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving, as this could cause an accident.
- In all selector lever positions except P the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep”.
- The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged with the vehicle stationary. If this were to happen, the vehicle would start to move immediately, and even a firmly applied handbrake might not restrain it – risk of accident!
- Do not press the accelerator while selecting a gear with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- The driver should never get out of the vehicle when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must apply the handbrake and engage the parking lock P.
- To avoid accidents, apply the handbrake firmly and select position P before opening the bonnet and working on the vehicle with the engine running. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇒ *page 128, Working on components in the engine compartment*.



Note

- If the lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the engine speed drop to idling before selecting D or S again.
- It is not possible to move the selector lever out of position P if the electrical power supply fails. In this case, the selector lever can be released manually ⇒ *page 76*.

General notes on driving an automatic

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



Fig. 80 Detail of the centre console: Selector lever with interlock button

Starting the engine

- ▶ The selector lever must be in position P or N.

Driving away from a standstill

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press and hold the interlock button (the button in the selector lever handle), set the selector lever to the desired position (e.g. D) ⇒ [page 71](#) and release the interlock button.
- ▶ Wait for the gearbox to engage the gear (a slight movement can be felt).
- ▶ Release the brake and press the accelerator ⇒ ⚠.

There are several convenient functions to help you drive away on gradients ⇒ [page 70](#).

Stopping briefly

- ▶ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle (for instance at traffic lights). Do not press the accelerator.
- ▶ To prevent the vehicle from rolling away, apply the handbrake before moving off on steep gradients ⇒ ⚠ and ⇒ ⚠.

Stopping/parking the car

If you open the driver's door while the selector lever is not in position P, the vehicle can roll away. The message **Shift to P and switch off ignition, otherwise vehicle can roll away** appears. A buzzer will also sound.

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Apply the handbrake firmly.
- ▶ Move the selector lever to P.

In some situations (such as on mountain roads or when towing a trailer or caravan) it can be advantageous to switch temporarily to the manual shift programme so that the gear ratios can be selected manually to suit the driving conditions ⇒ [page 74](#).

On a gradient the handbrake should be applied firmly first and the selector lever should be moved to P ⇒ [page 69](#). This reduces the load on the locking mechanism and makes it easier to move the selector lever out of position P.



WARNING

- The driver should never get out of the vehicle when the engine is running and a gear is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must apply the parking brake and engage the parking lock P.
- In all selector lever positions except P the vehicle must always be held with the foot brake when the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep”.
- Do not press the accelerator while selecting a gear with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- Never move the selector lever to R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
- Before you drive down a steep gradient, reduce the speed and select a lower gear (in tiptronic mode).
- Never allow the brake to drag when driving downhill and do not use the brake pedal too often or for long periods. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.
- To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the footbrake or handbrake if you have to stop.
- Never attempt to hold the vehicle with the clutch when stopping on a gradient. The

clutch is disengaged automatically if it is overloaded and becomes too hot - accident risk! If the clutch is overloaded, the indicator lamp  will light up and a message will appear ⇒ page 76.

CAUTION

- When you have stopped on a gradient, do not try to stop the vehicle rolling back by accelerating when a gear is engaged. This could cause the automatic gearbox to overheat and become damaged. Apply the hand-brake firmly or press the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling back.
- If you allow the car to roll with the selector lever in position N with the engine switched off, the automatic gearbox will be damaged as it will not be lubricated ⇒ page 163, *Tow-starting / towing away*.

Downhill speed control

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The downhill speed control function helps the driver when driving down steep gradients.

Downhill speed control is activated on a downhill gradient when the selector lever is in D/S and the driver presses the brake pedal. The gearbox automatically selects a suitable gear for the gradient. The downhill speed control function attempts to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the foot brake was applied (subject to the laws of physics and technical limitations of the power train). It may be necessary to adjust the speed again using the brake pedal.

Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you press the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

The downhill speed control function cannot defy the laws of physics and may therefore not be able to maintain a constant speed in certain circumstances. Always be prepared to use the brakes!

Manual gear selection (tiptronic mode)

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The tiptronic feature allows the driver to also change gear manually.



Fig. 81 Centre console: Manual gear selection using selector lever



Fig. 82 Steering wheel: Manual gear selection with paddle levers*

Gear selection with selector lever

The tiptronic mode can be selected either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- From position D, push the selector lever to the right to activate tiptronic mode. As soon as the automatic gearbox has activated this mode, the letter **M** will appear on the display; e.g. **M4** means that the vehicle is in 4th gear. On vehicles without driver information system, the letter **D** or **S** will disappear from the display.
- Briefly push the selector lever forwards  ⇒ Fig. 81 to change up a gear.
- Briefly pull the selector lever back  to change down a gear.

Gear selection with paddle levers*

You can use the paddle levers when the selector lever is in position D, S or M.

When you use the paddle levers the system switches to manual mode briefly. If you prefer to use the paddle levers for manual gear selection over an extended period, push the selector lever to the right from position D.

- To shift up a gear, briefly pull the paddle lever  ⇒ Fig. 82.
- To shift down a gear, briefly pull the paddle lever .

If you use the paddle levers when the selector lever is in positions D/S, the gearbox will remain in manual mode for a while. To switch back immediately to automatic mode after changing gears manually, pull the paddle lever  ⇒ Fig. 82 for approximately 1 second.

If you want to use the paddle levers permanently, push the selector lever from position D to the right into the tiptronic selector gate.

Description

The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.

Kick-down feature

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The kick-down feature is designed to give maximum acceleration.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed right down past the point of resistance at full throttle, the gearbox will shift down to a lower gear, depending on road speed and engine speed. The upshift to the next higher gear is delayed until the engine reaches maximum rpm.



WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Coasting mode

Applies to: vehicles with coasting mode

In coasting mode, you can use the vehicle's kinetic energy to drive without using the accelerator on certain stretches of road. This saves fuel by allowing you to take your foot off the accelerator earlier and let the vehicle coast (for instance when approaching a speed restriction in a built-up area).

Switching on coasting mode

Important: The vehicle speed must be above 20 km/h and the selector lever must be in position D.

- Select **efficiency** mode in drive select* ⇒ page 86.
- Take your foot off the accelerator.

The gearbox automatically disengages the clutch and lets the vehicle coast without the engine braking effect. The gear will no longer be displayed in the instrument cluster (e.g. E instead of E7). The message **Coasting** appears when the current fuel consumption display is selected in the on-board computer.

Stopping coasting mode

- If you would like to use the engine braking effect and overrun fuel cut-off, tap the brake pedal briefly.
- Then press the brake pedal or accelerator; the S tronic gearbox will automatically engage a gear.



WARNING

- Please remember that the vehicle will not slow down as quickly as usual when you take your foot off the accelerator when coasting mode is active - risk of accident!
- The vehicle can pick up speed if you are driving down a slope in coasting mode - risk of accident!
- If other people are using your car, you should draw their attention to the coasting mode.

Note

The coasting mode can only be activated on gradients below 12 %; it is deactivated temporarily on gradients of 15 % or greater.

Back-up programme

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

A back-up programme is in place should a fault occur in the control system.

If all the gears are highlighted at once in the instrument cluster display, a system malfunction has occurred. In this case, the S tronic gearbox will switch to a backup programme. In certain cases, you may not be able to select **reverse gear**.

CAUTION

If the gearbox switches to the back-up programme, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

Gearbox overheating! Please stop vehicle!

The gearbox is overheating and could be damaged. Stop the vehicle and let the gearbox cool down with the engine idling and the selector lever in position P. If the warning lamp and the message disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. Do not drive on if the warning lamp stays on and the message does not disappear. You should obtain professional assistance.

Releasing the selector lever manually

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

The selector lever can be released manually if the electrical power supply should fail.



Fig. 83 Selector lever: Removing the cover



Fig. 84 Manually releasing the selector lever from position P

The selector lever must be manually released from position P in order to move or tow the vehicle.

The manual release mechanism is located on the right underneath the selector gate. Releasing the selector lever requires a certain degree of practical skill. We therefore advise you to obtain professional assistance.

Removing the selector lever boot

- Apply the handbrake firmly ⇒ .
- Pull the boot up towards the selector lever knob in the direction of the arrows ⇒ Fig. 83.

Releasing the selector lever manually

- Push the yellow release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 84 and hold it in this position.
- Now press the interlock button on the selector lever  and move the selector lever to position N.

- After manually releasing the selector lever make sure you clip the gear lever boot back into the gearshift gate.

If the power supply should ever fail (discharged battery, etc.) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever must first be moved to position N. This is possible after operating the manual release mechanism.

**WARNING**

Always make sure the handbrake is firmly applied before moving the selector lever out of position P. If you do not apply the brake, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

Technical requirements

The towing bracket must comply with certain technical requirements.

Your car is intended mainly for transporting passengers and luggage. However, if suitably equipped, it can also be used to tow a trailer or caravan.

If the car is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements.

A 13-pin socket is provided to make the electrical connection between the car and the trailer. If the trailer you wish to tow has a **7-pin plug**, the necessary adapter cable can be obtained from a specialist retailer.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer ⇒ *page 84*.



WARNING

If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- In particular in high outside temperatures it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. The engine would then overheat.
- Incorrect installation can result in a safety risk.

Points to check before towing

There are a number of points which need to be checked before towing a trailer or caravan.

- Observe the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇒ *page 182*.

Trailer weights

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can then climb correspondingly steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). This figure refers to the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

The figures for the **draw bar weight** that appear on the identification plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct figures for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures for the towing bracket, are given in the registration documents and in ⇒ *page 182*.

Distributing the load

Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible. Loads carried in the trailer must be secured to prevent them slipping. A badly distributed load can also affect handling.

Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted **draw bar weight** on the ball joint of the towing bracket, but do not exceed the specified limit.

Tyre pressure

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for "full load" conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures) ⇒ *page 140*. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

Exterior mirrors

Check whether you can see enough of the road behind the trailer with the standard mirrors. If this is not the case you should have additional mirrors fitted. Both exterior mirrors should be mounted on hinged extension brackets. Adjust the mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear.

Headlights

Before starting a journey, check the headlight beam settings with the trailer hitched up. Adjust the headlight settings if necessary.

If the car is equipped with manual headlight range control, you only need to turn the adjuster control as required, see ⇨ *page 37*.

The headlight beam settings will be adjusted automatically if your vehicle is equipped with dynamic headlight range control*.

Power supply

The power supply to the trailer is interrupted when the ignition is switched off and while the engine is starting.

Removable ball joint coupling

On vehicles with a towing bracket obtained from Audi Genuine Accessories, the ball joint coupling is *removable*. It is stowed in the storage compartment underneath the floor panel together with the necessary fitting instructions.

Note

We recommend having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.

Driving tips

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care.

Weight distribution

Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. If this cannot be avoided, drive extra slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.

Speed

Normally, you must not exceed 80 km/h when towing a trailer or caravan. However, if the trailer/caravan is equipped with a trailer stabilisation system, you can drive at max. 100 km/h. Please observe any other regulations applicable in the country in which you are travelling.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

You should always reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of **swaying**. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.

Always brake in good time. If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking. Change down in good time before going down a steep hill so that you can use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle.

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. It should have friction linings at the sides to prevent excessive wear. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Electronic stabilisation control

The ESC ⇨ *page 93* makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

Overheating

In hot weather, keep an eye on the coolant temperature ⇨ *page 10*. When climbing long hills with the engine running fast in low gear, the coolant temperature can increase. Reduce speed immediately if the needle moves to the right end of the dial*; also see the information on the warning lamp  ⇨ *page 16*.

Rear carrier systems

When using rear carrier systems (e.g. bicycle racks) on the towing bracket, it is important not to exceed the maximum load.

The total weight of the rear carrier system and its load must not exceed 50 kg for this vehicle. However, it is also important to observe the maximum permissible load for the rear carrier system.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the maximum permissible load on the rear carrier system. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

Note

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Removable towing bracket

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

Special care is required when fitting and removing the towing bracket.



Fig. 85 Luggage compartment: Ball joint for towing bracket (example)

The removable ball joint attachment for the towing bracket is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ Fig. 85.

The ball joint can be fitted and removed by hand.

Equipment mounted on the towing bracket

Please note that the ball joint attachment can be damaged by using unsuitable equipment that is mounted onto the towing bracket (e.g. bicycle carrier). Due to the material construction, such damage to the towing bracket dramatically increases safety risks and in extreme cases could lead to breakage of the towing bracket while towing ⇒ .

Therefore, ensure **before buying** such equipment that it is suitable for mounting onto the vehicle's towing bracket and that it is approved for this purpose. In order to avoid damage to the ball joint from unsuitable equipment we recommend that equipment for the towing bracket be acquired through an Audi dealer. Also refer to ⇒ page 180.

WARNING

– Only mount equipment on the towing bracket of your vehicle if you are certain it will not damage the bracket. Use of unsuitable

equipment can result in severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break while pulling a trailer and cause an accident.

- Never use tools of any kind when fitting and removing the ball joint. This could damage the mechanism which locks the ball joint in place and impair its safety (accident risk).

i Note

- Do not attempt to modify or repair the ball joint or other towing bracket components.
- Should you have any difficulties when using the towing bracket, or suspect that it is not fitted properly, contact a qualified workshop.
- Before setting off, always check that the ball joint is secured properly ⇒ *page 83*.
- Never disengage the ball joint with the caravan / trailer still hitched or with a bicycle rack or similar accessory still attached.
- Detach the ball joint when you are not towing a trailer. Check whether the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture and that the bumper cover is fitted.
- The ball joint must be removed if you intend to clean the car with a steam cleaning attachment. Check whether the plug is properly inserted in the mounting fixture and that the bumper cover is fitted.
- For installation and removal of the ball joint we recommend using the gloves provided for this purpose.

Preparing the ball joint (step 1)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 86 Removable towing bracket: Requirements for fitting ball joint



Fig. 87 Removable towing bracket: Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position

Make sure the ball joint is clean and undamaged.

- Check the shaft section ① and operating lever ② ⇒ *Fig. 86* on the ball joint to make sure they are clean and undamaged.

The spring mechanism inside the ball joint must be in the "ready" position.

- Check whether the operating lever ② is in the "ready" position A.

Setting the spring mechanism to the "ready" position (if required)

If the operating lever is in position B, it must be moved to the "ready" position A.

- Insert the key ④ in the lock and turn it until the red marking on the key is facing upwards. Ensure that the key remains horizontal while bringing the operating lever ② into the "ready" position; otherwise it will not be possible to move the operating lever.
- Hold the neck of the ball joint with your left hand. Press the locking pin ⑤ ⇒ *Fig. 87* all the way in with your right hand and, at the same time, push the operating lever forcibly in the direction of the arrow ⑥ until it locks in position ⇒ ⚠ in *Fitting the ball joint (step 3)* on *page 82*.

The ball joint can only be installed if the internal spring mechanism is in the **ready** position.

Continued ⇒ *page 82, Fitting the ball joint (step 3)*.

Fitting the ball joint (step 2)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 88 Area below rear bumper: Removing bumper cover



Fig. 89 Area below rear bumper: Pulling out plug

- ▶ Turn both catches 90° ① and detach the bumper cover in the direction indicated (arrow ②) ⇒ Fig. 88.
- ▶ Remove the plug from the mounting fixture ⇒ Fig. 89.
- ▶ Check that the mounting fixture is free of dirt; clean if necessary ⇒ ⚠.

Continued ⇒ page 81, *Preparing the ball joint (step 1)*.

⚠ WARNING

It is important to keep the mounting fixture clean. Otherwise the ball joint may fail to engage securely (accident risk).

Fitting the ball joint (step 3)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

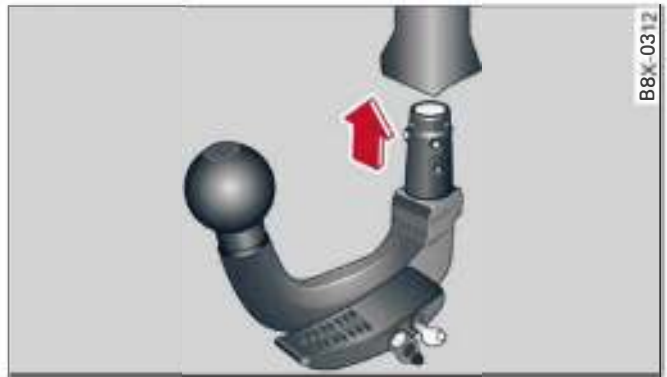


Fig. 90 Removable towing bracket: Inserting the ball joint

Inserting the ball joint

- ▶ With the spring mechanism in the “ready” position, insert the ball joint into the mounting fixture and push it upwards ⇒ Fig. 90 in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇒ ⚠. The spring mechanism should then engage automatically with an audible click.
- ▶ Lock the ball joint by turning the key to the green marking.
- ▶ Take out the key and clip the cover onto the lock to protect it.

Continued ⇒ page 83, *Fitting the ball joint (step 4)*.

⚠ WARNING

- If it is not possible to set the spring mechanism to the “ready” position as described above, please contact a qualified workshop and, for safety reasons, do not use the ball joint.
- To avoid injury, keep your hands away from the operating lever when inserting the ball joint in the mounting fixture.

Fitting the ball joint (step 4)

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 91 Removable towing bracket: Safety check



Fig. 92 Rear bumper: Towing bracket

- ▶ Check that the green marking **B** ⇒ Fig. 91 on the locking pin for the operating lever is visible. You can double-check by attempting to press in the locking pin; in this case you should feel strong resistance from the spring.
- ▶ Check that the operating lever is in position **A** ⇒ Fig. 91.
- ▶ Check that the ball joint is locked and the key **C** is removed. It should not be possible to move the operating lever downwards.
- ▶ Make sure that the ball joint fits tightly in the mounting fixture (try moving it about to check).
- ▶ Connect the cable for the trailer to the socket.
- ▶ When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the safety cable into the eye on the towing bracket ⇒ Fig. 92.



WARNING

To avoid accidents, the towing bracket must not be used if any one of the requirements listed above is not met. If this is the case, the ball joint must be fitted again properly ⇒ page 81. Please contact a qualified workshop in the event of a technical fault.



Note

The eye on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the safety cable of the trailer.

Removing the ball joint

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket



Fig. 93 Removable towing bracket: Removing the ball joint

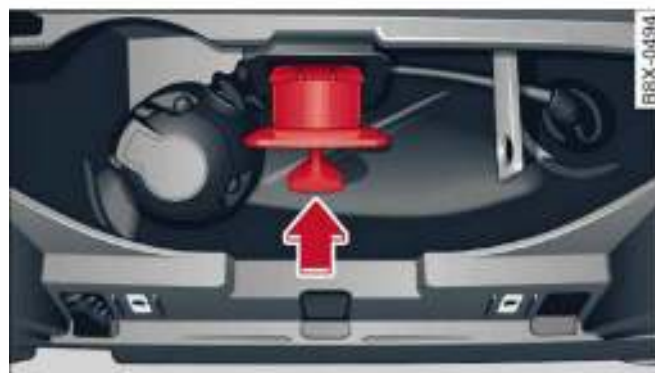


Fig. 94 Area below rear bumper: Fitting the plug

Before you remove the ball joint, fit the grease cap back on.

- ▶ Insert the key **1** ⇒ Fig. 93 in the lock and turn it so that the red marking on the key is facing upwards. Ensure that the key remains horizontal while releasing the spring mechanism; otherwise it will not be possible to move the operating lever.
- ▶ Hold the neck of the ball joint with your left hand. Press the locking pin **2** ⇒ Fig. 93 all the way in with your right hand and, at the same time, push the operating lever **3** downwards until it locks in position ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Pull the ball joint down out of the mounting fixture.
- ▶ Insert the plug into the mounting fixture ⇒ Fig. 94.

Towing a trailer

- ▶ Stow the ball joint attachment in clean condition under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ *page 80, Fig. 85*. Secure the ball joint with the belt.
- ▶ Insert the bumper cover with the retaining tabs first and turn both fasteners 90° until they are secure.

To prevent it being lost, the key cannot be taken out of the lock once the ball joint has been removed. If you lose the key, please contact an Audi dealer.

WARNING

- To avoid injury, keep your hands away from the operating lever when inserting the ball joint in the mounting fixture.
- Make sure that the plug is properly engaged in the mounting fixture on the vehicle. Otherwise dirt may accumulate in the mounting fixture and the ball joint may fail to engage securely the next time it is used – this could cause an accident.

Retrofitting

Applies to: vehicles with removable towing bracket

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

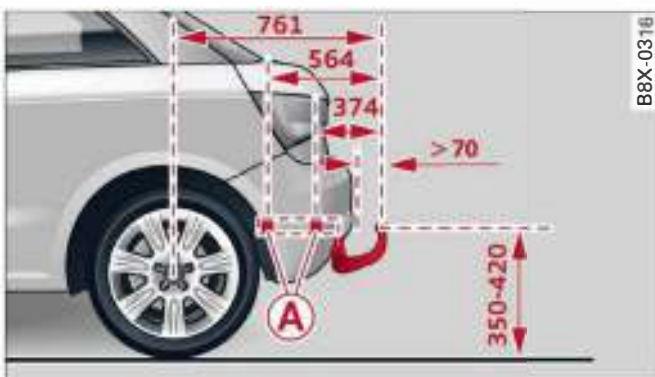


Fig. 95 Installation dimensions and positions of securing points, (from side)

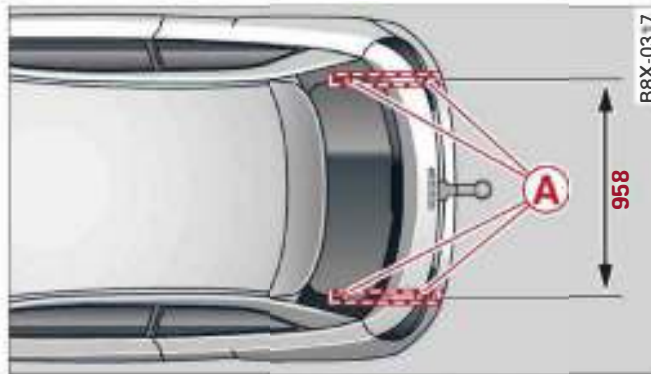


Fig. 96 Installation dimensions and positions of securing points (from above)

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer. The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points **A** ⇒ *Fig. 95*, ⇒ *Fig. 96*.

Qualified workshops are familiar with the method of installation and any modifications which may be required for the cooling system.

WARNING

If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- If the towing bracket is incorrectly fitted, this could cause a safety risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

CAUTION

If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Driver assist systems

Speed warning function

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function can help you keep below a pre-set maximum speed. It can be set, changed and deleted on the infotainment system.

The speed warning function will warn you if the vehicle exceeds the pre-set maximum speed. The system gives an audible warning signal if the set speed is exceeded by a small amount. At the same time, an indicator lamp  and a message will appear on the instrument cluster display. The indicator lamp  and the message will disappear when the road speed drops below the set value.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, etc.

Setting speed limit warning

Select: Function selector button  > control button (Car) Systems* > Driver assist > Speed warning.

Note

- Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the statutory speed limits.
- On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function warns you when you reach a speed of 120 km/h. This speed limit warning is preset at the factory.

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system allows you to drive at a constant speed of 30 km/h or higher.



Fig. 97 Control lever for cruise control system

- ▶ Pull the lever to position  ⇒ Fig. 97 to switch on the system.
- ▶ Drive at the speed you wish to set the system to.
- ▶ Press the button marked  to store the speed.

The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster will light up.

WARNING

- Always direct your full attention to the road, even when you are using the cruise control system. It is always the driver who is responsible for determining the speed and for keeping a safe distance to the other vehicles on the road.
- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in city traffic, stop-and-go traffic, on roads with a lot of bends or in difficult or slippery driving conditions (such as ice, fog, loose grit or gravel, heavy rain, etc.) - risk of accident!
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the cruise control system.
- Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator - this will override the cruise control system.

Note

- Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox:
The set speed cannot be reached if the currently selected gear is too high or too low. Make sure to change up or down a gear in good time.
- The cruise control cannot maintain a constant speed when travelling down steep hills. The vehicle tends to accelerate under its own weight. Change down to a lower gear in good time or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.

Adjusting the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ▶ Push the lever up towards  or down towards  ⇒ *page 85, Fig. 97* in order to increase or reduce the cruising speed setting in steps.
- ▶ To increase or reduce the speed quickly, hold the lever towards / until you reach the desired cruising speed.

Overriding the set speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can still use the accelerator pedal to increase speed in the normal way, for example to overtake another vehicle. Once you release the accelerator, the system will revert to the speed you stored initially.

However, if the vehicle exceeds the programmed speed significantly for a long time, the cruise control system will be deactivated temporarily. The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster will go out, but the programmed speed will remain stored.

Pre-selecting a speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can pre-select a desired speed while the vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Pull the lever to position  ⇒ *page 85, Fig. 97*.
- ▶ Push the lever up towards  or down towards  in order to increase or reduce the cruising speed setting.

- ▶ Release the lever to store the indicated cruising speed.

This function allows you to enter the desired cruise control setting speed ahead of time, for example before joining a motorway. Once you are on the motorway, you can activate the cruise control system by pulling the lever to position .

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Switching off temporarily

- ▶ Press the brake pedal, or
- ▶ Press the clutch pedal*, or
- ▶ Push the lever to position  (click stop not engaged) ⇒ *page 85, Fig. 97*, or
- ▶ Drive more than 10 km/h faster than the stored speed over a period of more than 5 minutes.

Switching off completely

- ▶ Push the lever to position  (click stop engaged), or
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.

The speed setting will remain stored after the system is temporarily deactivated. To resume the programmed cruising speed, release the clutch or brake pedal and pull the lever to position .

The stored speed will be deleted once the ignition is switched off.



WARNING

Do not resume the programmed cruising speed if this is too high for the traffic conditions - this can cause accidents.

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. The modes **efficiency***, **auto** and **dynamic** allow the driver, for example, to change from a sporty mode to a more comfortable one via the  button in the centre console or via the infotainment system*.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select modifies the following systems and characteristics depending on the mode selected:

Engine and automatic gearbox*

The response of the engine and automatic gearbox* to accelerator pedal movements will be more spontaneous or balanced, depending on which mode you select. In efficiency* mode the automatic gearbox selects the next gear* at lower engine speeds and the coasting mode is activated ⇒ *page 75*. This helps to reduce fuel consumption.

Suspension control*

The suspension control uses sensors to collect information on steering movements, braking and acceleration input by the driver, road surface quality, road speed and vehicle loading. With drive select you can adjust the suspension for a stiffer response (dynamic) or balanced set-up (efficiency* or auto).

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. The light, indirect steering response in auto mode is particularly suitable on long motorway trips, for instance. By contrast, dynamic mode gives the steering a tight, direct feel.

Automatic air conditioner*

The automatic air conditioner runs in a particularly economical mode when the efficiency* setting is selected.

Cruise control system*

The acceleration response is particularly economical in efficiency* mode.

Engine sound*

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected mode and ranges from subdued to dynamic.

Note

- Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Selector lever position S is automatically selected when dynamic mode is activated. E is selected in efficiency* mode.

- Please note that the efficiency* mode is not available in towing mode.
- Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: If you press the accelerator right down past the point of resistance in **efficiency*** mode, the engine power is automatically controlled to give your vehicle maximum acceleration.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select



Fig. 98 Centre console: Button for drive select

- To select the mode, press the **drive select** button repeatedly until the desired mode appears in the instrument cluster display. Or:
- On the infotainment system* select: Function selector button **[CAR]** > **efficiency***, **auto*** or **dynamic***.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, take your foot off the accelerator briefly after you change the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the engine.

efficiency* - trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving set-up and helps the driver adopt an economical driving style.

auto - gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride and is a good choice of set-up for everyday use.

dynamic - gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving. ►



WARNING

Always keep an eye on the traffic when using the drive select controls - Risk of accident!

Parking aids

General notes

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid/parking system plus

Various systems are available to help you when parking or manoeuvring in tight spaces, depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle.

The **rear parking aid** gives an acoustic warning if there are any obstacles *behind* the car
⇒ page 89.

When you are parking, the **parking system plus** warns you acoustically and optically about obstacles detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle
⇒ page 90.



WARNING

- Always watch the road and the area surrounding the vehicle. The electronic systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Please note that certain surfaces, such as clothing fabrics, cannot be detected or displayed by the system - risk of accident!
- Sensors have blind spots in which neither people nor objects are registered. It is particularly important to ensure that there are no small children or animals near the vehicle.
- Always keep a close watch on the area around the vehicle and make full use of the rear-view mirrors.
- Impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arches or underbody can cause misalignment of the sensors. This can impair the effectiveness of the parking aids. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.



CAUTION

- The system may not always be able to detect objects such as the following:
 - Chains, trailer draw bars, posts or fences
 - Objects above the sensors, such as wall protrusions, etc.

- Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire fences or powder snow
- As your car moves closer to low obstacles, they may disappear from the sensors' field of vision. Please note that you will no longer be warned about these obstacles.



Note

- In certain situations, a warning may be given by the system even if there is no obstacle within range of the sensors. This can be caused by the following, for instance:
 - Certain road surfaces or long grass
 - External ultrasound sources, e.g. from street cleaning vehicles
 - Heavy rain or snow or dense exhaust fumes
- To familiarise yourself with the system, we recommend that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.
- To ensure that the acoustic parking aid works properly, the sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice. Notes on cleaning ⇒ page 146.
- You can change the display* and adjust the volume and pitch of the beeps ⇒ page 91.
- Please refer to the notes on "Towing a trailer" ⇒ page 92.
- There is a slight delay in the picture displayed on the infotainment display*.

Rear parking aid

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

The rear parking aid is an acoustic parking system.

Sensors are located in the rear bumper. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps).

Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system.
Notes on cleaning ⇒ page 146.

Parking aids

The measuring range of the sensors starts at about:

Rear	Side	0.60 m
	Centre	1.60 m

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach the obstacle. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 89, ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 89!

The volume of the warning beeps will be gradually reduced after about four seconds if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (it will not be reduced if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m).

Activating

The parking aid is switched on automatically when reverse gear is engaged. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

The parking system plus provides acoustic and visual assistance when parking.

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. When the sensors detect an obstacle, you are alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a graphic display.

Please ensure that the sensors are kept free of stickers, deposits and any other substances which could impair the function of the system. Notes on cleaning ⇒ page 146.

Approximate range for each display zone:

Front	Side	0.90 m
	Centre	1.20 m
Rear	Side	0.60 m
	Centre	1.60 m

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach the obstacle. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is

less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 89, ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 89!

The volume of the warning beeps will be gradually reduced after about four seconds if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (it will not be reduced if the obstacle is closer than 0.30 m).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus



Fig. 99 Centre console: Button for parking aid



Fig. 100 Infotainment display: Proximity graphic

Switching on

Important: The infotainment display must be open.

- ▶ Engage reverse gear, or
- ▶ Press the **P** button in the centre console ⇒ Fig. 99. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

Switching off

- ▶ Drive forwards faster than 10 km/h, or
- ▶ Press the **P** button, or
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.

Segments in the graphic display

You can estimate the distance to a detected obstacle by referring to the red segments at the front and rear of the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 100*. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Stop moving immediately ⇒ ⚠ in *General notes on page 89*, ⇒ ⚠ in *General notes on page 89*!

Adjusting graphic display and warning beeps

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid/parking system plus

The settings for the graphic display and acoustic signals are controlled via the infotainment system*.*

- Select: Function selector button **CAR** > control button **(Car) Systems*** > **Driver assist** > **Parking system**.

Display*

- **on** - The graphic display appears on vehicles with parking system plus.
- **off** - The parking aid gives only acoustic warning signals when it is activated.

Warning beeps

Front volume* - Volume for the front zone

Rear volume - Volume for the rear zone

Front frequency* - Pitch of the beeps for the front zone

Rear frequency - Pitch of the beeps for the rear zone

In-car entertainment fader - The volume of the current audio source is reduced when the parking aid is switched on.

You will hear a short test tone each time you make a new setting.



Note

- You can also change the warning beep settings directly from the graphic display. Simply press the control button for **Settings**.
- New settings are not activated until you switch on the parking aid again.
- The settings will be automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key in use.

Fault warnings

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid/parking system plus

If there is a fault in the system there will be no confirming beep when you engage reverse gear.

Troubleshooting (for rear parking aid)

If you hear a warning tone for a few seconds when you switch on the parking aid, or while the parking aid is activated, a system fault has occurred. Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

The warning tone is given just once to indicate the fault. If you try activating the parking aid again, the system will not respond. This also applies if you switch the ignition off and then on again: the warning tone will only sound the first time you try activating the parking aid.

Troubleshooting (for rear parking aid or parking system plus)

If you hear a warning tone for a few seconds and the LED in the switch **P** starts flashing when you switch on the parking aid, or while the parking aid is activated, a system fault has occurred. Have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

If the fault is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, it will only be indicated by the flashing LED in the switch **P** the next time you activate the parking aid by selecting reverse gear. However, you will still hear the warning tone if you activate the parking aid by pressing the button.

Towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid/parking system plus and towing bracket

When the trailer socket is connected, the rear parking sensors are NOT activated when you select reverse gear or press the **P** button. This results in the following restrictions:

Rear parking aid*

There is no rear distance warning.

Parking system plus*

There is no rear distance warning. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode.



Note

Towing brackets which are not factory-fitted can restrict or impair the function of the parking aid.

Intelligent technology

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels. It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque. The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster starts flashing as soon as the ESC intervenes.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes. You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can shorten the braking distance. The braking force is automatically boosted if you press the brake pedal quickly in an emergency. You must keep pressing the brake pedal until the danger has passed.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the engine torque to match the amount of grip available. This helps the car to start moving, accelerate or climb a gradient.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheel and directs the power to the other driven wheel (or wheels on quattro* versions). This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically

if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control intervenes when cornering by braking the wheel(s) on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

Multicollision brake assist system

The "multicollision brake assist system" can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit detects that a collision has taken place upwards of a certain speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

- the driver presses the accelerator,
- the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system,
- or the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.



WARNING

- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may

otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.

 **Note**

– The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar de-

gree of wear. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.

– The systems can make noises when they intervene.

Switching on/off

The ESC is switched on automatically when the engine is started.



Fig. 101 Centre console: ESC button

the ESC is restricted or switched off, and the vehicle is stabilised to a greater or lesser degree.

In the following special situations, it may be advisable to switch on the sport mode to allow a certain amount of wheelspin:

– Rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it

– Driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces

The ESC operates in several levels. Depending on which level is selected, the stabilising function of

ESC levels

	Sport mode on	ESC/ASR off	Sport mode off or ESC/ASR on
Characteristics	The stabilising function of the ESC and traction control system (ASR) is restricted ⇒ ⚠.	The stabilisation function is no longer available ⇒ ⚠. ESC and traction control system (ASR) are switched off.	The stabilising function of the ESC and traction control system (ASR) is fully available again.
Operation	Press the  button briefly.	Press the  button for longer than 3 seconds.	Press the  button again.
Indicator lamps	 lights up.	 and ESC OFF light up.	 goes out, or  and ESC OFF go out.
Driver messages*	Stabilisation control: sport. Warning! Restricted stability	Stabilisation control: off. Warning! Restricted stability	Stabilisation control (ESC): on

 **WARNING**

You should switch on the sport mode or switch off the ESC/traction control system (ASR) only if your driving ability and the traf-

fic conditions allow you to do so safely – danger of skidding!

– The stabilising function is restricted when sport mode is switched on. The driven

wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads.

- When the ESC/traction control system (ASR) is switched off, the vehicle will not be stabilised.

Brakes

New brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

Wear

The rate of wear on the **brake pads** depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. Negative factors are, for instance, city traffic, frequent short trips or hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).

Effect of moisture or salt

In certain conditions, such as in heavy rain, early morning dew, or after washing the car or driving through water, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads. The brakes should be “dried” by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

When you are driving at higher speeds with the windscreen wipers on, the brake pads are very briefly brought into contact with the brake discs. This automatic process which goes unnoticed by the driver is carried out at regular intervals and is intended to improve braking response in wet conditions.

The effectiveness of the brakes can also be temporarily reduced if the car is driven for some dis-

tance without using the brakes when there is a lot of salt on the road in winter. The layer of salt that accumulates on the discs and pads can be removed with a few cautious brake applications ⇒ ⚠.

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages without using the brakes very much.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

If the brake pedal travel should ever increase *suddenly*, this may mean that one of the two brake circuits has failed. Drive immediately to the nearest qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. On the way to the dealer, be prepared to use more pressure on the brake pedal and allow for longer stopping distances.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

Brake servo

The brake servo amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running ⇒ ⚠.



WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to inconvenience or endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).



CAUTION

- Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really

intend to brake. This overheats the brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.

- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. If you still have to use the brakes, it is better to brake firmly at intervals than to apply the brakes continuously.

Note

- If the brake servo is out of action, you must apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you normally would.
- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the front wheels is not obstructed, otherwise the brakes can overheat.

Electro-mechanical power steering

Electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering.

The degree of power assistance is adapted *electronically*, depending on the speed.

Warning/indicator lamps and driver messages

Steering defective! Do not drive vehicle!

If the warning lamp lights up permanently and the message appears, there may be a power steering failure.

Do **NOT** drive on. Obtain professional assistance.



If the indicator lamp lights up, the steering response may be heavier or lighter than usual. In addition, it is possible that the steering wheel will be off centre when driving in a straight line.

Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.



Steering lock: malfunction! Contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

Have the system malfunction repaired by a qualified workshop as soon as possible – risk of accident!



Note

You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp  or  lights up only briefly.

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

On quattro models the engine power is distributed to all four wheels.

General notes

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the engine power is distributed to all four wheels. The distribution of power is controlled automatically according to your driving style and the road conditions. Also refer to ⇒ *page 93*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities - both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇒ .

Winter tyres

Thanks to its four-wheel drive, your car will have plenty of *traction* in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, we still recommend that winter tyres or all-season tyres should be fitted *on all four wheels* when winter road conditions are expected, mainly because this will give a better *braking response*.

Snow chains

On roads where snow chains are mandatory, this also applies to cars with four-wheel drive
⇒ page 142, *Snow chains*.

Replacing tyres

On vehicles with four-wheel drive, all four tyres must have the same rolling circumference. Also avoid using tyres with varying tread depths
⇒ page 138, *New wheels or tyres*.

Off-roader?

Your Audi does not have enough ground clearance to be used as an off-road vehicle, so it is best to avoid rough tracks and uneven terrain. Also refer to ⇒ page 183.



WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast on icy or slippery roads just because the car still has good acceleration in these conditions – risk of accident!
- On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed to warn the driver, as with a front-wheel drive car. So do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).

Power management

This system helps to ensure reliable starting

The power management controls the distribution of electrical energy and thus helps to ensure that there is always enough power available to start the engine.

If a vehicle with a conventional electrical system is left parked for a long time, the vehicle battery will gradually lose its charge because certain electrical equipment (such as the immobiliser) continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. In some cases there may not be enough power available to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent power management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.

The main functions incorporated in the power management system are **battery diagnosis**, **residual current management** and **dynamic power management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis function constantly registers the condition of the vehicle battery. Sensors detect the battery voltage, battery current and battery temperature. This enables the system to calculate the current power level and charge condition of the vehicle battery.

Residual current management

The residual current management reduces power consumption while the vehicle is parked. It controls the supply of power to the various electrical components while the ignition is switched off. The system takes the battery diagnosis data into consideration.

Depending on the power level of the vehicle battery, the individual electrical components are switched off one after the other to prevent the vehicle battery from losing too much charge and to ensure that the engine can be started reliably. ►

Dynamic power management

While the vehicle is moving, this function distributes the available power to the various electrical components and systems according to their requirements. It ensures that on-board systems do not consume more electrical power than is being generated, and thus maintains the maximum possible vehicle battery power level.

Note

- The power management system is not able to overcome the given physical limits. Please remember that the power and life of the vehicle battery are limited.
- If the indicator lamp  ⇒ page 16 appears, the starting ability may be impaired.

Points to remember

Starting ability has first priority.

Short trips, city traffic and low temperatures all place a heavy load on the vehicle battery. In these conditions a large amount of power is consumed, but only a small amount is supplied. The situation is also critical if electrical equipment is in use when the engine is not running. In this case power is consumed when none is being generated.

In these situations you will be aware that the power management system is intervening to control the distribution of electrical power.

When the vehicle is parked for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle for a period of several days or weeks, the power management will gradually shut off the on-board systems one by one, or reduce the amount of current they are using. This limits the amount of power consumed and helps to ensure reliable starting even after a long period. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

If you listen to the radio or use the other infotainment* functions when the engine is not running, this will discharge the battery.

On vehicles with driver information system*, a message will appear before the battery power drops to a level where the starting ability is impaired. This message advises you to start the engine in order to recharge the battery.

When the engine is running

Although the alternator generates electrical power, the vehicle battery can still become discharged while the vehicle is being driven. This can occur when a lot of power is being consumed but only a small amount supplied, especially if the vehicle battery is not fully charged initially.

To restore the necessary energy balance, the system will then temporarily shut off the electrical components that are using a lot of power, or reduce the current they are consuming. Heating systems in particular use a large amount of electrical power. If you notice, for instance, that the seat heating* or the rear window heater is not working, they may have been temporarily switched off or regulated to a lower heat output. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

You may also notice that the engine runs at a slightly faster idling speed. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern. The increased idling speed allows the alternator to meet the greater power requirement and charge the vehicle battery at the same time.

Information saved in the control units

The vehicle is fitted in the factory with electronic control units that, among other things, control the engine and the gearbox. The control units also monitor the exhaust system and the airbags.

The control units continually analyse data relevant to the vehicle while you are driving. In the event of faults or anomalies in the vehicle data, only these data are saved. As a rule, faults are

shown by the warning lamps in the instrument cluster.

Data saved in the control units can only be read and analysed with special equipment.

A qualified workshop is only able to recognise and deal with faults by using the relevant saved data. Among other things, the saved data may contain the following information:

- Data relating to the engine and the gearbox
- Speed
- Direction of travel
- Braking force
- Seat belt warning system data

The control units installed will not under any circumstances record conversations in the vehicle.

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is **not** equipped with an event data recorder.

In an event data recorder, information about the vehicle is temporarily saved. In the event of an accident, you can therefore obtain detailed information about the course of events. On vehicles with an airbag system, accident-related data such as impact speed, seat belt status, seat positions and trigger times can be saved. The exact information saved depends on the manufacturer.

The installation of an event data recorder is subject to the agreement of the vehicle's owner. This process is governed by legislation in some countries.

Reprogramming control units

All data for controlling components are saved in the control units. Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any convenience features are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual will no longer be accurate for the features that have been changed. We recommend having the reprogramming approved.

Your Audi dealer will be able to provide you with information about possible reprogramming options.

Event memory

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out the event memory located in the footwell on the driver's side of the vehicle. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.



WARNING

The diagnostic connection must not be used for other purposes. Incorrect use can cause malfunctions – risk of accident!

Safe driving

General notes

Safety is the first priority

The safety features in your vehicle are harmonised to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in accident situations. However, they can only be effective if you and your passengers sit in the correct position and adjust and use the safety equipment properly.

For these reasons, this chapter explains why these safety features are so important, how they can protect you, what you need to remember when using them, and how you and your passengers can gain the most benefit from them. There are also a number of important safety warnings which you and your passengers should always observe in order to minimise the risk of injury.

WARNING

- The information in this chapter is important for the driver of the vehicle and all passengers. The other chapters in this manual (and, where applicable, in the other literature supplied with the vehicle) contain further important notes which you should read and observe for your own safety and that of your passengers.
- Ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Before every trip

The driver is responsible for the safety of the passengers and the safe operation of the vehicle at all times.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- ▶ Make sure that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
- ▶ Check the tyre pressures.
- ▶ Make sure that all windows are clean and give good visibility to the outside.

- ▶ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇒ *page 108*.
- ▶ Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- ▶ Adjust the front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly.
- ▶ Make sure that the front passenger's head restraint is adjusted to the correct position.
- ▶ Make sure that the head restraints for the rear passengers are in the fully raised position.
- ▶ Make sure that children are protected with suitable safety seats and properly worn seat belts ⇒ *page 103*.
- ▶ Sit in the correct position in your seat. Make sure that your passengers are sitting in the correct positions ⇒ *page 46*.
- ▶ Fasten your seat belt correctly. Make sure that your passengers do the same ⇒ *page 111*.

What factors can impair your safety?

Safety on the road is directly related to how you drive, and can also be affected by the passengers in the vehicle.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired in any way, you endanger yourself and other road users ⇒ . Therefore:

- ▶ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a mobile phone, etc.
- ▶ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medication, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▶ Obey all traffic regulations and speed limits and always maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.
- ▶ Always adjust your speed to suit the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ▶ Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours without a stop.
- ▶ If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

WARNING

- Distractions while driving or any kind of impairment to your driving ability increase the risk of accident and injury.

- Do not place loose objects on the dash panel. These objects could fly around the interior when the vehicle is moving (under acceleration or whilst cornering) and distract the driver – risk of accident!

Correct sitting positions

Correct driving position

The correct driving position is important for safe driving.

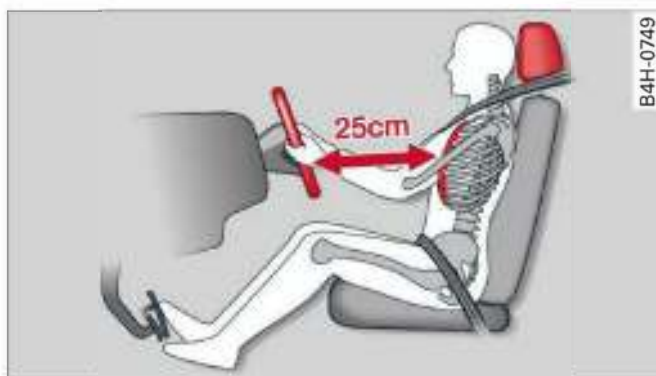


Fig. 102 Adjust seat and sit in correct position

For your own safety, and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following driving position.

- ▶ Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the centre of the steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 102.
- ▶ Adjust the height and fore/aft position of the driver's seat so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor without fully straightening your legs ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Adjust the backrest to an upright position so that your back remains in contact with the upholstery.
- ▶ Adjust the longitudinal position of the steering wheel so that your arms are slightly bent and you can read the dials and instruments easily.
- ▶ Make sure that you can comfortably reach the top of the steering wheel.
- ▶ Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is between the centre and the top of the head. If this is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint as near as possible to this position ⇒ page 102.
- ▶ Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ page 111.

- ▶ Keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in full control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇒ page 46, *Front seats*.



WARNING

- A driver who is not sitting in the correct position or who is not wearing a seat belt can be fatally injured if the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the centre of the steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 102.
- While driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- To reduce any risk of injury to the driver during a sudden brake application or in an accident, never drive with the backrest tilted too far back. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt webbing or an incorrect sitting position.
- Adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Correct position for the front passenger

The front seat passenger must sit at least 25 cm away from the dash panel so that the airbag has enough room to inflate and give maximum protection in an accident.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend adjusting the front passenger's seat as follows: ▶

- ▶ Adjust the backrest to an upright position so that your back remains in contact with the upholstery.
- ▶ Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is between the centre and the top of the head. If this is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint as near as possible to this position ⇒ *page 102*.
- ▶ Keep both feet in the footwell in front of the seat.
- ▶ Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ *page 113*.

In **exceptional cases** you can disable the front passenger's airbag via the key-operated switch* ⇒ *page 124*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇒ *page 46, Front seats*.

WARNING

- A passenger who is not sitting in the correct position or who is not wearing a seat belt can be fatally injured if the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust the front passenger's seat so there is a distance of at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the dash panel.
 - Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is moving; never rest them on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the seat. If you sit in an incorrect position, you increase your risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag is triggered, you could sustain potentially fatal injuries by sitting out of position.
 - To reduce the risk of injury to the front passenger in the case of sudden braking or an accident, the passenger should never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belt can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the passenger is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt webbing or an incorrect sitting position.
 - Always adjust the head restraints properly for maximum protection.

Correct position for rear passengers

Rear seat passengers should sit upright with both feet on the floor and wear their seat belts properly whenever the vehicle is moving.

To reduce any risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident, passengers in the rear seats must observe the following:

- ▶ Before carrying passengers on the rear seats, pull the head restraints on the occupied seats all the way up ⇒ *page 48*.
- ▶ Keep both feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- ▶ Fasten your seat belt correctly ⇒ *page 114*.
- ▶ Use appropriate child restraint systems for children travelling in the vehicle ⇒ *page 103*.

WARNING

Rear passengers sitting out of position can suffer severe injuries.

- Always adjust the head restraints to the fully raised position for maximum protection.
- Seat belts only offer maximum protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the passengers are wearing the seat belts properly. By not sitting upright, rear passengers increase the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt webbing.

Correct adjustment of head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of the vehicle's occupant protection system. They can help to reduce the risk of injuries in most accident situations.



Fig. 103 Head restraint (seen from the front)

The head restraints must be adjusted properly to provide maximum protection.

- ▶ Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is between the centre and the top of the head. If this is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint as near as possible to this position.
- ▶ Before carrying passengers on the rear seats, pull the head restraints on the occupied seats all the way up.

For more information on how to adjust the head restraints, see ⇒ *page 47*.



WARNING

- Travelling with the head restraints removed or incorrectly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.
- Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can also increase the risk of injury during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Occupants can suffer severe or fatal injuries if they sit in an incorrect position while the vehicle is moving.

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed. The driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants, especially for children.

- ▶ Never allow anyone to sit out of position while the vehicle is moving ⇒

The following list shows just some examples of incorrect sitting positions which can be dangerous to all occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.

- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of the window.
- Never put your feet out of the window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never climb into the luggage compartment.



WARNING

Sitting out of position increases the risk of severe injuries.

- Sitting out of position exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions.
- Before starting a trip, sit in the correct position and stay in this position as long as the vehicle is moving. Before every trip, make sure all passengers are sitting in the correct positions and remain correctly seated at all times ⇒ *page 46, Front seats*.

Child seats

Safety notes for using child seats

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, children must always use child restraint systems when travelling in the car.

Please note the information in this Owner's Manual when installing and using child seats. Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements.

For safety reasons, we recommend that child seats be installed on the rear seats. If you have **no alternative** but to install a child seat on the front passenger's seat, it is most important to note the warnings ⇒ .

WARNING

To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle if there are no suitable child seats. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Babies and children must never travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child seat.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child seat.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, causing possibly fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- To ensure proper protection by the child restraint, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position ⇒ *page 113*. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child seat. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect sitting position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child seat.
- If you are using a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child faces the direction of travel, you should move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

- Child seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are located directly in the path of the front passenger's airbag if it inflates. In this case, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries if the airbag were to be deployed.
- Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat.
- Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch* ⇒ *page 124*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch* as soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
- Always replace the child seat with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.

Child safety and side airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags



Fig. 104 Illustration of a dangerous sitting position near the opening for the side airbag

Make sure that children do not lean out of the child seat towards the door trim. If the side airbag were to inflate in an accident, it could strike the child on the head and cause serious injury. ►

WARNING

- To avoid injury, the child's head must always be well away from the opening for the side airbag ⇒ *page 121, Side airbags*.
- Do not leave or place any objects in the area of inflation for the side airbag – risk of injury!

Child seat categories

Only use child restraint systems that are officially approved and suitable for the child.



Fig. 105 Child seat categories

Child restraint systems are covered by the European standard ECE-R 44. An orange label is usually attached to child seats which have been tested in accordance with this standard. Information on weight categories, ISOFIX size class and the approval category of the child seat can be found on this label.

Child seats are divided into five weight categories:

Child seats: categories 0 and 0+

Rearward-facing carry cots are most appropriate for these categories (up to 13 kg). Our recommendation: Audi carry cot with optional ISOFIX base.

Child seats: category 1

In this category (9 to 18 kg), rearward or forward-facing child seats with an integrated seat belt system are most appropriate. Rearward-facing child seats should be used for as long as safely possible. Our recommendation: Audi child seat with ISOFIX base.

Child seats: categories 2 and 3

Child seats with backrests used in conjunction with seat belts are most appropriate for these categories (15 to 36 kg). Our recommendation: Audi child seat "youngster plus".

WARNING

- Categories 0, 0+ and 1 (rearward-facing): Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child. If you have no alternative but to let a child travel on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated* beforehand ⇒ *page 124*.
- Categories 1 (forward-facing), 2 and 3: The back of the child seat should be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. If the rear head restraint obstructs you when installing the child seat, adjust or remove it completely ⇒ *page 48*. After removing the child seat, install the passenger's head restraint again immediately and adjust it to the correct position. Travelling with the head restraints removed or incorrectly adjusted increases the risk of severe injuries.
- Categories 2 and 3: The shoulder section of the belt must be fitted across the centre of the child's collar bone close to the torso. It must never run against or across the neck. The lap belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and not over the stomach or abdomen. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.
- Wait for as long as possible before changing up to the next child seat group.

Note

We recommend child seats from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories: www.audi.com/childseats.

Fitting child seats

Securing child seats with ISOFIX

Applies to: vehicles with ISOFIX

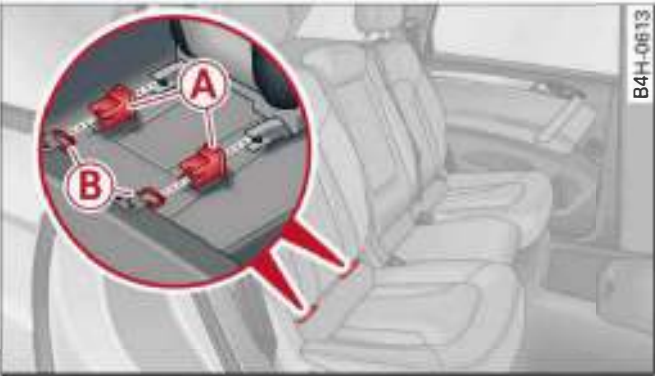


Fig. 106 Rear seat: Fitting protective sleeves for ISOFIX child seats



Fig. 107 Rear seat: Securing child seat with ISOFIX

Child seats of the categories 0, 0+ and 1 with ISOFIX can be secured without seat belts using the ISOFIX anchorages on the outer rear seats.

- Fit the protective sleeves of the child seat (A) onto the ISOFIX anchorages (B) between the backrest and the seat cushion ⇒ Fig. 106.
- Push the mountings on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchorages until they engage audibly.
- Pull on the child seat to check whether both sides have engaged properly.
- Rear seats: If possible secure the child seat additionally to the top tether¹⁾ anchorage ⇒ page 107.

If you wish to attach an ISOFIX child seat to the ISOFIX anchorages in your vehicle, please ensure that it is approved for the seats in your vehicle. The following table ⇒ table on page 106 shows the installation options. The necessary informa-

tion can be found on the orange label on the child seat.

An ISOFIX child seat categorised as “vehicle-specific”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” (IL) is suitable for a seat if:

- your vehicle is listed in the model list provided by the child seat manufacturer and
- your child seat is marked with IL in the following table.

An ISOFIX child seat categorised as “universal” (IUF) is suitable for a seat if:

- your child seat is marked with IUF in the following table and
- the child seat can be secured with top tether¹⁾ ⇒ page 107.

Weight class	ISOFIX size category	Outer rear seat positions
Category 0: up to 10 kg	E	IL
Category 0+: up to 13 kg	---	IL

	E	
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	---	IL IUF
	B1	
	B	

WARNING

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒ in *Safety notes for using child seats on page 104*, ⇒ in *Child seat categories on page 105* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
- Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.

¹⁾ This function is not available for all export versions.

- The anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child seats with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child seat, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages - this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Securing child seats with ISOFIX and top tether

Applies to: vehicles with top tether



Fig. 108 Rear backrest: Top tether anchorage

- ▶ Push up the head restraint behind the child seat.
- ▶ Push the mountings on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchorages until they engage audibly ⇒ page 106, Fig. 107.
- ▶ Pull on the child seat to check whether both sides have engaged properly.
- ▶ Guide the top tether strap of the child seat **underneath** or **past both sides** of the head restraint (depending on the type of child seat) towards the rear.
- ▶ Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage¹⁾ ⇒ Fig. 108.
- ▶ Pull the tether strap tight so that the top of the child seat rests securely against the backrest.

Two or three top tether anchorages are provided, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle. Note the information in the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.

WARNING

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒  in *Safety notes for using child seats on*

page 104, ⇒  in *Child seat categories on page 105* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.

- The anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for one child seat with ISOFIX and top tether. Do not attempt to secure other types of child seat, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages - this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.
- Only *one* child seat should be attached to each top tether anchorage.

Securing child seats with seat belt

If you wish to use a child seat in the approval category “universal” (u), please ensure that it is approved for the seats in your vehicle. The following table shows the installation options. The necessary information can be found on the orange label on the child seat.

Weight class	Front passenger's seat	Rear	
		Outer seats	Centre seat (vehicles with 5 seats*)
Category 0 up to 10 kg	u	u	u
Category 0+ up to 13 kg	u	u	u
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	u	u	u
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	u	u	u
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	u	u	u

To adjust the front passenger's seat to the child seat and to achieve the best possible seat belt positioning, move the front passenger's seat as ►

¹⁾ This function is not available for all export versions.

far upwards as possible using the seat's height adjustment. After installing the child seat on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's backrest forward until it makes contact with the child seat.

WARNING

- Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒  in *Safety notes for using child seats on page 104*, ⇒  in *Child seat categories on page 105* and the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer.
- Never install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat unless the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated – this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be obstructed by floor mats or any objects in the footwell.

- Make sure that none of the pedals is obstructed and all of the pedals can be pressed all the way down to the floor.
- Make sure that all pedals are able to return freely to their original positions.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If one of the brake circuits should fail, increased brake pedal travel will be required to bring the vehicle safely to a stop.

WARNING

Any obstructions that restrict pedal travel can cause loss of vehicle control and critical situations on the road.

- Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.

Floor mats on the driver's side

Use only floor mats which can be securely fastened in the footwell and do not obstruct the pedals.

- Make sure that floor mats are securely fastened and cannot interfere with the pedals ⇒ .

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and are firmly secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialist retailer.

WARNING

Any obstructions that restrict pedal travel can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
- Never lay or install additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.

Stowing luggage safely

Luggage compartment

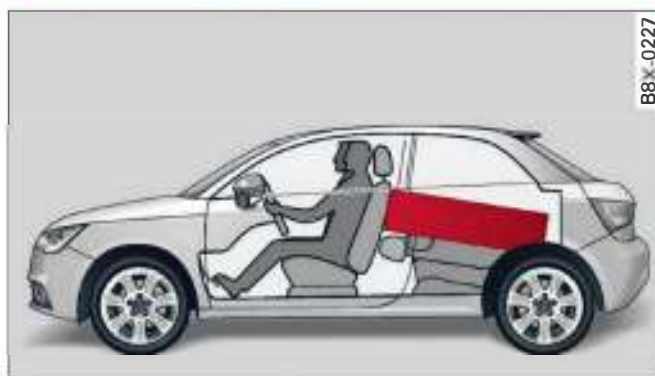


Fig. 109 Heavy items should be placed as far forwards as possible.

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment.

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and secure them properly ⇒ Fig. 109.

- Secure the load with the luggage net* or with non-elastic straps secured to the fastening rings* ⇒ *page 109*.

WARNING

- Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly and cause a safety hazard or impair the handling of the vehicle by changing the weight distribution.
- In an accident or a sudden manoeuvre, loose objects in the passenger compartment can be flung forward – risk of injury! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings*. Use suitable securing straps, particularly when transporting heavy objects.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle ⇒ *page 182, Technical data*. Exceeding the permitted axle loads or gross weight limit can affect the vehicle's handling characteristics, and increase the risk of accidents, personal injuries or damage to the vehicle.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the child would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times ⇒ *page 111*.

CAUTION

Make sure that no hard objects chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and damage them.

Note

- The tyre pressure must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying ⇒ *page 140*.
- Air circulation in the vehicle helps reduce fogging of the windows. Used air escapes through ventilation slots in the side trim of the luggage compartment. Make sure that these ventilation slots are not obstructed.
- Suitable belts for securing loads to the fastening rings* are commercially available.

Fastening rings

Unsecured loads are a hazard to all vehicle occupants.

There are fastening rings in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects ⇒ *page 52*.

- Use the fastening rings to secure items safely in the luggage compartment ⇒  *in Luggage compartment on page 109*.

During a collision or an accident, even small and light objects can possess so much energy that they can cause very severe injuries. The amount of this “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the object. The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle.

For example: an object weighing 4.5 kg is lying unsecured in the vehicle. During a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, this object generates a force corresponding to 20 times its weight. That means that the effective weight of the object increases to about 90 kg. You can imagine the severity of the injuries which might be sustained if this “projectile” strikes an occupant as it flies through the passenger compartment.

WARNING

If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

- To prevent pieces of luggage or other objects from flying forward, always use appropriate tensioning straps which are properly secured to the fastening rings.
- Never secure a child seat on the fastening rings.

Seat belts

Why is it so important to use seat belts?

Seat belts provide effective protection

The common belief that passengers can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision is false.



Fig. 110 Driver with correctly positioned seat belt – good protection if the brakes are applied suddenly

It is an established fact that seat belts provide good protection in accidents. Therefore wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

When worn correctly, seat belts hold the occupants in the best position for maximum protection ⇒ *Fig. 110*. The seat belts are capable of absorbing much of the kinetic energy which is generated in a collision. They also help to prevent uncontrolled movements which could lead to severe injuries ⇒ *page 111, Important safety notes when using seat belts*.

If they wear the seat belts correctly, the passengers benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy gradually. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to absorb the kinetic energy generated in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the forces acting on the occupants and consequently the risk of injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, the physical principles involved are the same in other types of accidents. This is why it is so important to put on the seat belts before every trip - even when “just driving around the cor-

ner”. Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well ⇒ .

Seat belts worn correctly have been shown to be an effective means of reducing the potential for injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident ⇒ *page 112, Forces acting in a collision*.

For information on how children can travel safely in the car refer to ⇒ *page 103, Child seats*.



WARNING

- Seat belts must be put on before every trip - even when driving in town. This also applies to the rear passengers – risk of injury!
- During pregnancy, women should always ensure they wear a seat belt. The best way to protect the unborn child is to protect the mother ⇒ *page 114, Wearing and adjusting the seat belts during pregnancy*.

Important safety notes when using seat belts

There are a number of safety points concerning the seat belts which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.



WARNING

- The seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the seats are adjusted properly ⇒ *page 46, Front seats*.
- To ensure proper protection, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position ⇒ *page 113, How to wear seat belts properly*. Ensure that the seat belts are worn exactly as recommended in this chapter. Belts which are not worn properly can increase the risk of injury in accidents considerably.
- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt. It is especially dangerous to place a seat belt over a child sitting on your lap.

- Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly
⇒ *tab. Cleaning the interior on page 148.*
- The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging properly.
- The latch plate of the belt must always be engaged in the correct buckle for that seat, otherwise the belt will not be fully effective.
- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a qualified workshop. The belt anchorages should also be checked.

Forces acting in a collision

The physical principles involved in a frontal impact

Very large forces are generated during a collision; these forces have to be absorbed.



Fig. 111 Passengers of a vehicle which is headed for a brick wall. They are not using seat belts.



Fig. 112 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple:

Both the moving vehicle and the passengers possess energy, which is known as “kinetic energy” ⇒ *Fig. 111*. The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be absorbed in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h to 50 km/h, for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four. Because these passengers are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy has to be absorbed at the point of impact ⇒ *Fig. 112*. This would result in serious or potentially fatal injury. ►

Even at urban speeds of 30 km/h to 50 km/h, the forces acting on the occupants in a collision can reach the equivalent of 1 ton (1000 kg) or more. At greater speed these forces are even higher. Again: if the speed doubles, the forces increase by a factor of four.

Passengers who do not wear seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a frontal collision they will continue to move forward at the speed their car was travelling just before the impact.

What happens to passengers not wearing seat belts?

Passengers not wearing seat belts risk fatal injuries in the event of an accident.



Fig. 113 A driver not wearing a seat belt can be thrown forwards



Fig. 114 A rear passenger not wearing a seat belt can be thrown forwards

In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers will be thrown forwards and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, etc ⇒ Fig. 113. Passengers not wearing their belts risk being thrown out of the car. This could result in potentially fatal injuries.

The common belief that occupants can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision

is false. Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to hold yourself in the seat.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown forwards violently in an accident. Rear passengers who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants ⇒ Fig. 114.

How to wear seat belts properly

Putting on the three-point seat belts

Always fasten your seat belts before driving off.



Fig. 115 Positioning of head restraints and seat belts



Fig. 116 Driver's seat: Belt buckle and latch plate

- ▶ Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly before putting on the seat belt
⇒ page 46, *Front seats*.
- ▶ To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap
⇒ Fig. 116, ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click.

- Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

The three-point inertia reel belts are tensioned automatically. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

WARNING

- Always make certain that the belt is positioned properly ⇒ *Fig. 115* - risk of injury ⇒ *page 114, Adjusting the seat belts*.
- The latch plate of the belt must always be engaged in the correct buckle for that seat. Otherwise the belt will not be fully effective and the danger of injury increases.

Adjusting the seat belts

Always position seat belts properly for maximum safety.

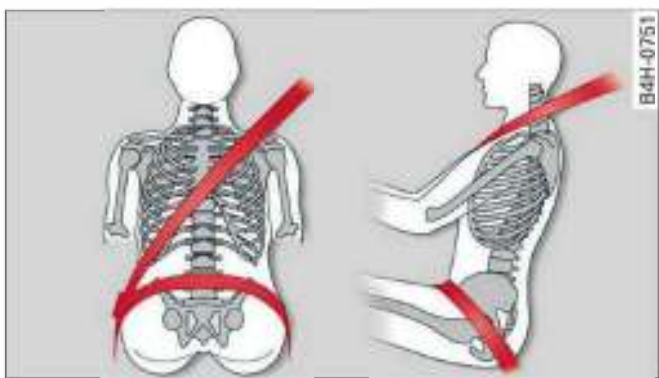


Fig. 117 Adjusting shoulder/lap belt

The height of the front seat on your vehicle can be adjusted in order to match the position of the seat belt to your height.

WARNING

- The shoulder section of the belt should be fitted across the centre of the collar bone close to the body. To fasten the belt, take hold of the belt above the latch plate and pull it slowly down across your chest. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible over the hips so that there is no pressure on the lower abdomen. The belt should always be worn tightly ⇒ *Fig. 117*.

Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.

- Always make sure that belt is positioned properly. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.
- Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.

Wearing and adjusting the seat belts during pregnancy

To afford the best protection for the unborn child it is important for the mother to wear the seat belt properly at all times.



Fig. 118 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

Women should always ensure they adjust the seat belt correctly during pregnancy.

- Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly before putting on the seat belt ⇒ *page 46, Front seats*.
- To fasten the belt, pull it down evenly across your chest. Wear the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible over the hips so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇒ *Fig. 118*, ⇒ .
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ *page 113, Fig. 116*.
- Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

WARNING

During pregnancy, women should especially make sure to wear the lap belt as low as possible across the hips so that there is no pressure on the stomach.

Seat belt height adjustment

Seat belt height adjusters can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the seat belt.



Fig. 119 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

The shoulder section of the belt should be fitted across the centre of the collar bone close to the body ⇒  in *Adjusting the seat belts* on page 114.

- Take hold of the guide fitting and slide it up ② ⇒ Fig. 119, or
- Compress the adjuster ① and slide the guide fitting downwards ②.
- After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

Note

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Taking off the seat belts

The red button releases the belt from the buckle.



Fig. 120 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

- Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇒ Fig. 120. The latch plate will spring out of the buckle.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up by the retractor.

Belt tensioners

How the belt tensioners work

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners are tensioned automatically in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

- False activation of the belt tensioner is possible.
- Any work on the tensioner system or removal and installation of system components for other repairs must be performed by a qualified workshop.
- The belt tensioners can only be activated once. If they have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced.

Note

- Some smoke may be released when the belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Your authorised

Seat belts

dealer is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Airbag system

Description of airbag system

General notes on airbag system

The airbag is an integral part of the car's passive safety system.

In conjunction with the three-point seat belts, the airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision.

In a severe side collision the side airbags and the head-protection airbags reduce the risk of injury to the occupants ⇒ .

In addition to their normal function of protecting the occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection.

The airbag system will only work with the ignition on. The airbag system is monitored electronically; the airbag warning lamp indicates whether the system is functioning properly.

The main parts of the airbag system are:

- The electronic monitoring system (control unit and sensors)
- The two front airbags
- The side airbags and head-protection airbags
- The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster

There is a fault in the airbag system if the warning lamp

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
- does not go out about 3 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
- goes out and then comes on again after the ignition is switched on.
- comes on or flickers while the car is moving.



WARNING

- The airbags are not a substitute for the seat belts; they are an integral part of the car's overall passive safety system. The airbags can only offer effective protection if the oc-

cupants are wearing their seat belts. For this reason it is very important to wear the seat belts at all times ⇒ *page 111, Why is it so important to use seat belts?*.

- The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly ⇒ *page 46, Front seats*.
- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the airbag system be triggered in an accident.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. If repairs to other vehicle components make it necessary to perform work on the airbag system or to remove or install parts of the airbag system, this may cause damage to the airbag system. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation. For this reason, you should always have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- If a fault should occur in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the system may fail to trigger in an accident.
- Do not attempt to modify components of the airbag system in any way.
- Never make any alterations to the front bumper or the body.
- Do not remove the front seats.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; if the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced. Should the airbag system or airbag modules have to be replaced, the qualified workshop carrying out the replacement will document all details.
- If any repair work is required or the airbag and restraint systems have to be replaced, have the work carried out by your authorised Audi dealer or a qualified workshop which adheres to the Audi factory standards. This will minimise the risk of injury.
- If you sell the vehicle, remember to pass on the complete Service Wallet to the new

owner. If any of the airbags have been deactivated, it is important that the new owner is also given the relevant documents.

- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag or belt tensioner systems are scrapped.
- Applies to: vehicles with battery in luggage compartment

For safety reasons, the alternator and the starter are both disconnected from the battery via a pyrotechnic circuit breaker in severe accidents.

- Any repairs to the pyrotechnic circuit breaker must always be performed by a qualified workshop – risk of accident!
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or the circuit breaker are scrapped.



Note

The airbag may release a fine dust when it inflates. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Front airbags

Important notes on front passenger's airbag



Fig. 121 Version 1, passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker



Fig. 122 Version 2, passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When are the airbags triggered?

One or more airbag systems are triggered in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances.

Factors determining the triggering response

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on.

Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are protected by wearing the seat belts.

A sticker¹⁾ with important information about the front passenger's airbag is provided on the front passenger's sun visor. Please refer to the safety notes in the following chapters:

- Child seats and front passenger's airbag
⇒ page 103, *Safety notes for using child seats*
- Safe distance from front passenger's airbag
⇒ page 120, *Important safety notes on the front airbag system*
- Objects between front passenger and front passenger's airbag
⇒ page 120, *Important safety notes on the front airbag system*

¹⁾ Not available in all export vehicles.

Description of front airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.



Fig. 123 Driver's airbag in steering wheel



Fig. 124 Front passenger's airbag in dashboard

The front airbag for the driver is located in the padded hub of the steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 123. The front airbag for the front passenger is in the dashboard above the glove box ⇒ Fig. 124. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIRBAG".

In conjunction with the three-point seat belts, the front airbags give additional head and chest protection for the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe frontal collision ⇒ **⚠** in *Important safety notes on the front airbag system* on page 120.

How the front airbags work

When fully inflated, the airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury.



Fig. 125 Front airbags in inflated condition

The driver's and front passenger's airbag are triggered in certain frontal collisions ⇒ Fig. 125. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbags fill with a propellant gas and open out in front of the driver and front passenger ⇒ Fig. 125. In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second). The fully deployed airbags cushion the forwards movement of the front occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

Special openings in the airbag allow the gas to escape at a controlled rate to restrain the forward movement of the occupant's head and torso. Once the impact has been absorbed, the airbag deflates sufficiently for the front occupants to see forward.

Important safety notes on the front airbag system

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.



Fig. 126 Minimum distance from steering wheel

WARNING

- It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel or dashboard ⇒ *Fig. 126*. The airbag system will not be able to give the required protection if you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard. There is also a risk of injury if the airbags are inflated. The front seats and head restraints must always be positioned correctly for the height of the occupant.
- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward or to the side, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury. Should the airbag system be triggered in an accident there is an even greater risk of injury.
- Never let a child travel on the front seat without an appropriate restraint system. If the airbag is triggered in an accident, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries ⇒ *page 103, Child seats*.
- Child seats in which the child faces the rear of the car are located directly in the path of the front passenger's airbag if it inflates. In this case, the child could sustain serious or fatal injuries if the airbag were to be deployed.

- Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat.
- Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch* ⇒ *page 124*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch* as soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
- Occupants sitting in the front of the car must never carry any objects or pets in the space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
- Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit on the passenger's side of the dashboard, and do not obstruct or modify them in any way. These parts should only be cleaned with a dry cloth (or with a cloth moistened with plain water). It is also important not to attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- Any work on the airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the steering wheel or removal of seats) must be performed by a qualified workshop.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts.

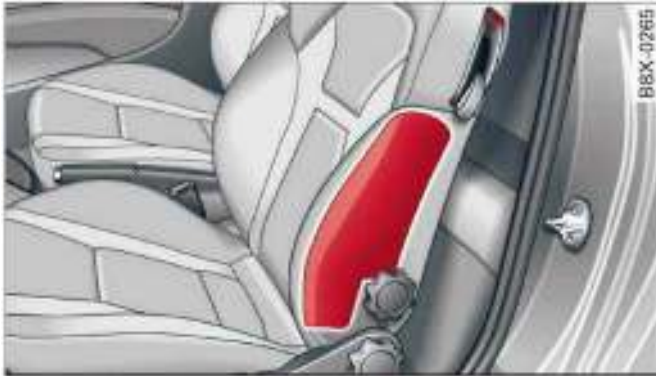


Fig. 127 Location of side airbag in driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the backrest padding of the front seats ⇒ Fig. 127. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word "AIR-BAG".

In conjunction with the three-point seat belts, the side airbags give the occupants additional protection for the whole upper part of the body (i.e. the chest, stomach and pelvis) in the event of a severe side collision ⇒ ⚠ in *Important safety notes on the side airbag system* on page 121.

In a side collision the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact.

How the side airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags

When fully inflated, the side airbags reduce the risk of injuries to the upper part of the body.



Fig. 128 Side airbags in inflated condition

In certain types of side collision, the side airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 128. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second).

When fully deployed, the airbags cushion the impact for the occupants and help to reduce the risk of injury to the whole upper part of the body (i.e. the chest, stomach and pelvis) on the side facing the door.

Important safety notes on the side airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with side airbags

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at greater risk of injury should the side airbags be triggered in an accident. This applies particularly to children if they are not properly protected by a child restraint system ⇒ page 104, *Child safety and side airbags*.
- If children are not seated correctly, they are at greater risk of injury in an accident. This is particularly the case if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat and the airbag system is triggered. This could result in serious or potentially fatal injury ⇒ page 103, *Child seats*.
- It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as cup holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags (front and rear*).
- The sensors for the airbags are located in the front doors. You must therefore not make any modifications to the doors or door

trim (e.g. retrofitting loudspeakers), as this could impair the function of the side airbags. Any damage to the front doors could lead to faults in the system. Repairs or any other work on the front doors must therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.
- Do not apply excessive force to the sides of the backrests (such as hard knocks or kicks), as this could damage parts of the system. The side airbags could then fail to operate when required.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. Conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag when it inflates out of the backrest, and seriously reduce the airbag's effectiveness.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Any work involving the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the seats) must always be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may fail to work properly.

Note

All the other airbags in the car will remain functional if the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated.

Head-protection airbags

Description of head-protection airbags

Applies to: vehicles with head-protection airbags



Fig. 129 Location of head-protection airbags above the doors

The head-protection airbags are located above the doors on the left and right sides of the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 129*. The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”.

In conjunction with the three-point seat belts and side airbags, the head-protection airbags give the occupants additional protection against head and neck injuries in a severe side collision ⇒  in *Important safety notes on the head-protection airbags on page 123*.

Together with other design features (including cross-braces in the seats and the overall strength of the body structure), the head-protection and side airbag system offers an effective further improvement to occupant protection in side impacts.

How the head-protection airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with head-protection airbags

When fully inflated, the airbags reduce the risk of head or chest injury in a side collision.



Fig. 130 Head-protection airbags in inflated condition

The head-protection airbag system is triggered in certain types of side collision ⇒ *Fig. 130*. Further airbag systems may also be triggered, depending on the circumstances.

When the system is triggered, the airbag fills with a propellant gas and covers the entire area in front of the side windows, including the door pillars. The head-protection airbag inflates to soften the impact if an occupant strikes parts of the interior or objects outside the vehicle with their head. By reducing the head impact and restraining uncontrolled movement of the head, the airbag also reduces the forces acting on the neck.

In order to provide the desired extra protection in an accident, the airbags have to inflate extremely rapidly (within fractions of a second).

Important safety notes on the head-protection airbags

Applies to: vehicles with head-protection airbags

There are a number of safety points concerning the airbag system which you should remember. This will help to reduce the risk of injury in an accident.



WARNING

- It is important to ensure that the area around the openings for the head-protection airbags remains unobstructed at all

times, so that the airbags can inflate properly if needed.

- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. When using the coat hooks, do not hang the clothes on coat hangers.
- The space between the passengers and the head-protection airbags must never be occupied by children, other passengers or pets. Passengers should never lean out or put a hand or arm out of the window while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not move the sun visors out to cover the side windows if there is anything attached to them (such as pens or a garage door opener). These objects could cause injury if the head-protection airbag is triggered.
- The sensors for the airbags are located in the front doors. You must therefore not make any modifications to the doors or door trim (e.g. retrofitting loudspeakers), as this could impair the function of the side airbags. Any damage to the front doors could lead to faults in the system. Repairs or any other work on the front doors must therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Sun blinds fitted on the rear doors must not obstruct or impair the airbags in any way.
- If unsuitable accessories are installed near the head-protection airbag, the protection afforded by the airbag can be seriously impaired if the system is triggered. When the head-protection airbag opens, parts of these accessories could be thrown into the vehicle and injure passengers ⇒ *page 180*.
- Any work involving the head-protection airbags, or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as repairs to the roof liner), must always be performed by a qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may fail to work properly.

Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag

If an airbag has been deactivated, it should be reactivated as soon as possible so that it can continue to give the required protection.



Fig. 131 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



Fig. 132 Dashboard: Warning lamp lights up when passenger's airbag is deactivated

If you have no alternative but to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat you must deactivate the front passenger's airbag beforehand.

We recommend that child seats should be fitted on the rear seat so that the front passenger's airbag can remain functional and provide protection in an accident ⇒ [page 103](#).

The key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag is located in the glove box ⇒ [Fig. 131](#).

- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, use the key to turn the key-operated switch to ①.
- The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the key to position ②.

Monitoring of airbag system

The indicator lamp  ⇒ [page 17](#) will light up for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on.

If the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated, the indicator lamp "PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF" or "AIRBAG OFF" will light up constantly as a reminder ⇒ [Fig. 132](#).



WARNING

- If you have no alternative but to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand. Potentially fatal injuries to the child can result if the front passenger's airbag is not deactivated ⇒ [page 103](#)!
- If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child seat is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.



Note

All the other airbags in the car will remain functional if the front passenger's airbag has been deactivated with the key-operated switch.

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Petrol grade

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 standard. You can fuel your vehicle with fuels containing a maximum of 10% ethanol (E10). The petrol grades have different **octane ratings** (RON).

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's tank flap:

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium or min. RON/ROZ 91 Normal

The use of premium petrol (95 RON) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (RON 91) can be used with a slight loss of power.

Unleaded fuel only, min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

Unleaded fuel only RON/ROZ 98 Super Plus or min. RON/ROZ 95 Super, Premium

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (RON 95) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with

premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.



CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E50 or E85), because this will damage the fuel system.
- Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- You should use only petrol additives which have been approved by Audi. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.



Note

- You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
- In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

Diesel fuel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel fuel during the cold

months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel fuel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

CAUTION

- Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
- Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Obtain professional assistance.

Filling the tank

Procedure for filling the tank

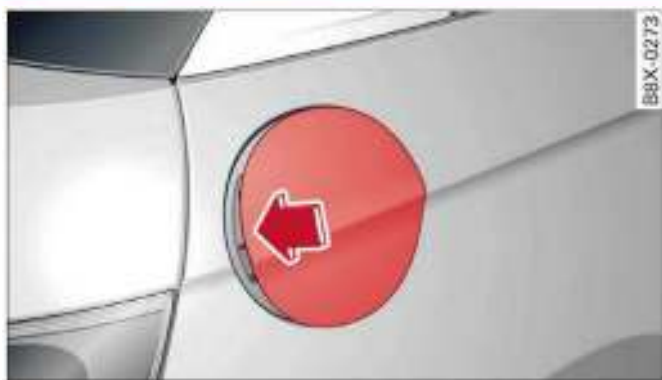


Fig. 133 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening the fuel tank flap



Fig. 134 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached

The fuel tank flap is unlocked and locked automatically by the central locking system.

Unscrewing the tank cap

- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to open it
⇒ Fig. 133.
- ▶ Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.

- ▶ Hook the cap onto the open flap ⇒ Fig. 134.

Closing the tank cap

- ▶ Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- ▶ Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

When the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly it will switch itself off as soon as the tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇒ page 125.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the **Technical data** section ⇒ page 183.

WARNING

Fuel is highly inflammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.

- For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. The canister could become damaged in an accident and leak.
- Observe all relevant statutory regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.
- When filling your tank or a spare fuel canister with fuel, do not smoke and keep away from naked flames – risk of explosion!
- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
 - Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. An electrostatic charge could build up during filling, causing the fuel vapour to ignite – risk of explosion! Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.
 - Insert the filler nozzle as far as possible into the spare fuel canister.
 - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.

- Make sure you never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapour is explosive – danger to life!

! CAUTION

- If any fuel is spilt onto the vehicle, it should be removed immediately as it could otherwise damage the paintwork.
- Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can occur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).

! CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.

Releasing the tank flap manually

The tank flap can be released manually if the central locking system should fail to operate.

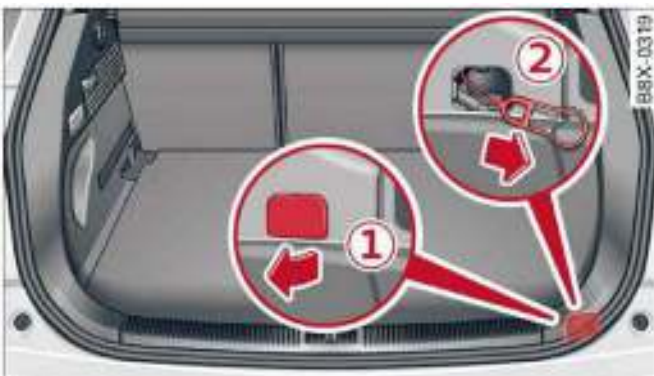


Fig. 135 Luggage compartment (rear right): Cover cap

- Open the boot lid.

- Prise open the cover at the slot with the screwdriver (in the tool kit) ①.
- To release the tank flap, carefully pull the plastic cable in the direction indicated (arrow) ②.
- Press the left side of the tank flap to open it
⇒ page 126, Fig. 133.

! CAUTION

Stop pulling the ring when you feel resistance (the release mechanism is not audible). Otherwise, you could damage the manual release mechanism.

Emission control systems

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The diesel particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. when the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter becomes obstructed with soot and the indicator lamp  for the diesel particulate filter lights up
⇒ page 18.

! WARNING

- The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.
- Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot
– risk of burns!

- Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the emission control system (catalytic converter or diesel particulate filter), do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
- Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system - risk of fire!

Engine compartment

Working on components in the engine compartment

Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.



WARNING

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- On vehicles with manual gearbox place the gear lever in neutral, on vehicles with automatic gearbox move the selector lever to position P.
- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Keep children away from engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator anti-freeze).

- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
- When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
- Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. The cooling system is under pressure.
- Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick rag to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Never remove the engine cover panel - risk of burns!
- If any tests have to be performed with the engine running, there is an extra safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system.
- Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Never open the throttle inadvertently (for instance by hand from the engine compartment) if a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary with the engine running. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
- Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
 - Do not smoke.
 - Never work near naked flames.
 - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.



CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage. ►



For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected in the workshop.



Note

Applies to: right-hand drive vehicles

Some of the containers/reservoirs mentioned below are located on the other side of the engine compartment.

Opening/closing bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 136 Footwell on driver's side: Release lever



Fig. 137 Release catch under the bonnet

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

Opening the bonnet

- ▶ With the driver's door open, pull the lever under the dashboard in the direction indicated (arrow) ⇒ Fig. 136.
- ▶ Lift the bonnet slightly ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Press the release catch under the bonnet upwards ⇒ Fig. 137. This will release the arrester hook.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- ▶ To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- ▶ Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down* ⇒ ⚠.



WARNING

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

Engine compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

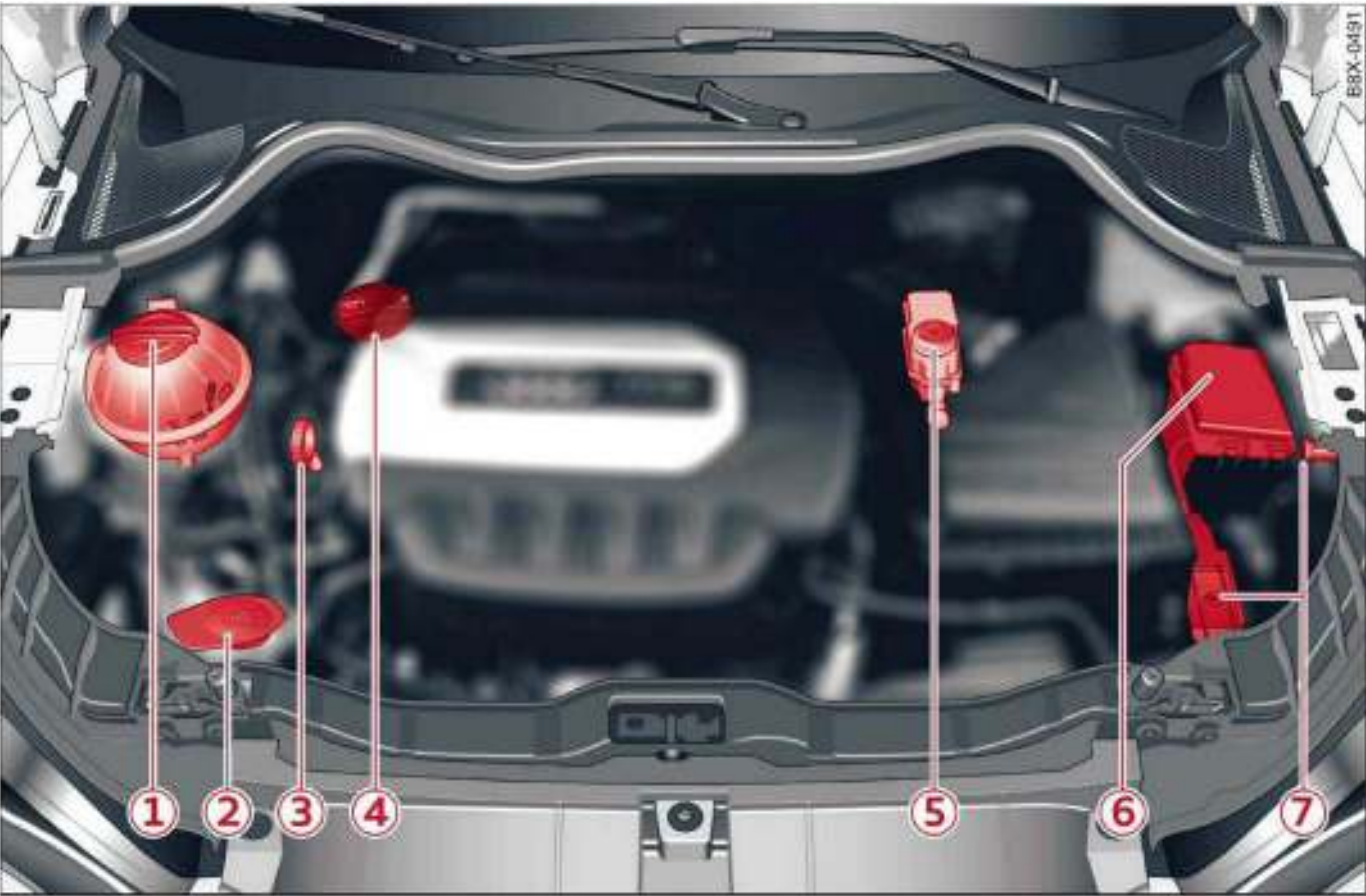


Fig. 138 Typical locations of fluid containers, engine oil dipstick and engine oil filler cap

- | | |
|---|-----|
| ① Coolant expansion tank (📏) | 133 |
| ② Windscreen washer container (🚿) | 136 |
| ③ Engine oil dipstick | 131 |
| ④ Engine oil filler cap (🔑) | 131 |
| ⑤ Brake fluid reservoir (🚰) | 133 |
| ⑥ Fuse box | 167 |
| ⑦ Vehicle battery (+) or jump-start terminal (+) (both beneath a cover) and earth point (-) | 134 |

If you have to top up the oil between oil changes, use the grades of oil specified in the table in accordance with VW standards.

You will need to know whether

- the vehicle is being serviced based on the flexible or fixed oil change service (see last service record).
- the vehicle has a petrol or diesel engine (see sticker on inside of fuel tank flap).

The positions of the oil dipstick ③ and the engine oil filler cap ④ may be different on some engine versions.

Engine oil

Choosing the correct engine oil grade

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

	Oil Change Service	
	Flexible	Fixed
Petrol engines	VW 504 00	VW 502 00
Diesel engines	VW 507 00	With diesel particulate filter: VW 507 00 Without diesel particulate filter: VW 505 00

Audi recommends



Audi recommends LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts

i Note

If the oil grades specified in the table are not available, you can use one of the following grades as a substitute. To prevent damage to the engine, this should not be done more than once between oil changes and no more than 0.5 litres should be used.

- Petrol engines: ACEA A3 or API SN (API SM) standard
- Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4 standard

i Note

The flexible oil change service is not available for all models in all countries.

Checking and topping up the engine oil level



Fig. 139 Oil dipstick (example): Checking engine oil level



Fig. 140 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ *page 128*, *Working on components in the engine compartment*.

Checking engine oil level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Switch off the warm engine. Wait for a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ *page 129*.
- Pull out the oil dipstick ⇒ *page 130*, *Fig. 138*, wipe it with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
- Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇒ *table on page 131*.
- If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil.

Markings on oil dipstick ⇒ *Fig. 139*

- | | |
|----------|--|
| ① | When the oil level is near the marking ① you must top up the engine oil. Please refer to ⇒ ! . |
| ② | Do NOT add engine oil. |

Topping up the engine oil

- Unscrew the cap ⇒ *Fig. 140* from the oil filler opening ⇒ *page 130*, *Fig. 138*.
- Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇒ *page 130*.
- After two minutes check the oil level once again.
- If the oil level is too low, add a smaller quantity of engine oil. The level must always be below the marking **②** ⇒ *Fig. 139* ⇒ **!**.
- Screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick all the way in.

WARNING

- Ensure that no engine oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
- The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
- Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

CAUTION

- The engine oil must never drop below the marking ① - risk of engine damage!
- When topping up the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is not above the marking ②, as this may result in damage to the catalytic converter or to the engine. Do NOT start the engine. Contact a qualified workshop to extract the engine oil if necessary.
- No additives should be used with engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- Never pour engine oil down drains or into the ground.
- Always observe statutory requirements when disposing of empty oil canisters.

Note

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before setting off on a long trip.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp  ⇒ page 16. However, we recommend that it should be checked occasionally.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. We recommend mixing coolant additive with distilled water.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. Only use one of the following coolant additives. It is possible to mix these additives.

Coolant additive	Specification
G13	TL 774 J
G12++	TL 774 G

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -25 °C
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °C

CAUTION

- Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of anti-freeze additive if the approved type of additive is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.

Topping up coolant



141 Engine compartment: Cap of coolant expansion tank

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ *page 128, Working on components in the engine compartment.*

Checking coolant level

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Read off the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇒ *page 130, Fig. 138*. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.

Topping up coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇒

- ▶ Wait for the engine to cool down.
- ▶ Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a cloth, and carefully unscrew the cap anti-clockwise ⇒
- ▶ Add coolant in the correct concentration ⇒ *page 132* up to the top mark.
- ▶ You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.
- ▶ Screw the cap on again tightly.

Any loss of coolant normally indicates a leak in the cooling system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the cooling system checked. If there are no leaks in the system, a loss of coolant can only occur if the coolant boils and is forced out of the system as a result of overheating.

WARNING

- Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system - risk of engine damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
- The cooling system is under pressure. Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot: you could be scalded by escaping steam.
 - The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children - risk of poisoning.
 - When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off - risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system - risk of engine damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Obtain professional assistance.

Brake fluid



Fig. 142 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ *page 128, Working on components in the engine compartment.*

Checking brake fluid level

- ▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ *page 130, Fig. 138*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇒

Checking and topping up fluids

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Having brake fluid changed

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by a qualified workshop.

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired - risk of accident! Do not drive on. Obtain professional assistance.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come in contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Battery

General warnings for batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇒ .

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Explanation of warnings on vehicle battery:

	Wear safety glasses!
	Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and safety glasses.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery!



A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!



Keep children away from batteries and battery acid.



WARNING

Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.



CAUTION

If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇒ *page 135, Charging the vehicle battery.*



For the sake of the environment

 Batteries contain toxic substances including sulphuric acid and lead. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Vehicle battery

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle for a period of several days or weeks, the power management will gradually shut off the on-board systems one by one, or reduce the amount of current they are using. This limits the amount of power consumed and helps to ensure reliable starting even after a long period ⇒ *page 97*. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total battery discharge. If the

vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the vehicle battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇒ *page 135*. Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the vehicle battery. The starting capacity may be reduced as a result. For this reason, you should have the vehicle battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Charging the vehicle battery



Fig. 143 Version 1) Engine compartment with battery: Terminals for jump leads and battery charger



Fig. 144 Version 2) Engine compartment with jump-start connections: Terminals for jump leads and battery charger

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ *page 128*, *Working on components in the engine compartment*.

Important: Only use chargers with a **maximum charge voltage of 14.8 V** (the battery cables do not have to be disconnected).

The battery is located in the engine compartment or luggage compartment (depending on the type of engine). Vehicles which have a battery in the

luggage compartment also have a jump-start connection in the engine compartment. This can also be used to charge the battery. The battery is always charged from the engine compartment. The earth point ⊖ is always on the vehicle's body.

- ▶ Please first check which layout your vehicle has: version 1) ⇒ *Fig. 143* or version 2) ⇒ *Fig. 144*.
- ▶ Note the warnings ⇒ ⚠ in *General warnings for batteries on page 134* and ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ *page 129*.
- ▶ Fold open the cover on the positive terminal.
- ▶ Connect the charger cables correctly to the earth point ⊖ and positive terminal ⊕.
- ▶ Now connect the battery charger to the mains and switch on.
- ▶ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▶ Now disconnect the charger cables.
- ▶ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▶ Close the bonnet ⇒ *page 129*.



WARNING

- A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the vehicle battery in a well ventilated area.
- When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. You must not use a vehicle battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the battery acid to escape - risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process - risk of explosion!



Note

- Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the vehicle battery.

- Before you charge the vehicle battery, always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

Windscreen washer



Fig. 145 Engine compartment: Windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ *page 128, Working on components in the engine compartment*.

The container for the windscreen washer  contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen, the rear window and the headlight washer system* ⇒ *page 130, Fig. 138*. For the container capacity, please refer to ⇒ *page 183*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

CAUTION

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder:** After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due! / INSP, Oil change due! / OIL** or **Oil change and inspection due! / OIL AND INSP** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on.

Checking the service intervals

You can look up the distance and time remaining until the next oil change or next service inspection:

- In the instrument cluster: Switch on the ignition and press and hold the **[SET]** button  ⇒ *page 10, Fig. 3* until the hour display starts to flash. Then press the **[SET]** button repeatedly until the service interval display appears.
- Select the following on the infotainment system*: Function selector button **[CAR]** > control button **(Car) Systems* > Servicing & checks > Service intervals**.

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. The distance to the next oil change is initially displayed based on the driving profile prior to the oil change. Your own personal driving profile is used subsequently to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

It is very important that you reset the oil change display if you change the oil yourself. The next oil change will be due after a fixed service interval.

To reset the display, proceed as follows:

- In the instrument cluster: Select the oil change display ⇒ *page 136, Checking the service intervals*. Press and hold the **[0.0]** button **(8)** ⇒ *page 10, Fig. 3* for at least three seconds.
- Select the following on the infotainment system*: Function selector button **[CAR]** > control button **(Car) Systems*** > **Servicing & checks** > **Service intervals**. Turn the rotary pushbutton to scroll down to **Reset oil change interval** and press to confirm.



CAUTION

- Do not reset the oil change interval display unless you have changed the oil.
- Keeping to the correct service intervals is most important for the service life and residual value of the vehicle (and especially for the life of the engine). Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

General notes

- ▶ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▶ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▶ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▶ Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▶ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▶ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

CAUTION

- Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. We recommend that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.
- Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar.

New wheels or tyres

It is best to have all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they

have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel.

- ▶ New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- ▶ All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- ▶ Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- ▶ We recommend the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇨ .
- ▶ If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇨ .

The sizes of the rims and tyres approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document ¹⁾). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the drive-line could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly only on the inner side of the wheel):

¹⁾ COC = Certificate of conformity

DOT ... 2216 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2016.

Audi Genuine Tyres

Audi Genuine Tyres with the marking “AO” or “RO” are specially matched to your Audi. When used properly, these tyres meet the highest standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

**WARNING**

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- Run-flat tyres* may only be used on vehicles which were originally equipped with this type of tyre ⇒ *page 144*.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage

Fig. 146 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇒ *Fig. 146* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The minimum tread depth¹⁾ is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇒ .

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

¹⁾ Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall
⇒ *page 158*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.

WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

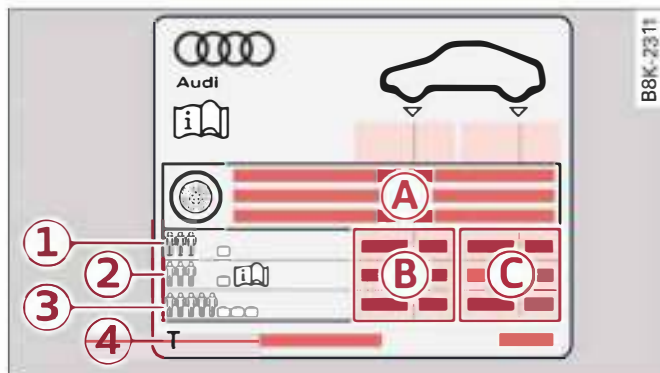


Fig. 147 End face of driver's door: Sticker listing the tyre pressures

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the compact temporary spare wheel* are specified on a sticker. The sticker
⇒ *Fig. 147* is on the end face of the driver's door.

- A** Tyre size
- B** Tyre pressure for the front wheels
- C** Tyre pressure for the rear wheels
- 1** Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded

2 Tyre pressure (comfort setting)* if vehicle is partially loaded (not available on all vehicles) If a maximum speed is given, it must not be exceeded.

3 Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

4 Tyre pressure for the compact temporary spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting **1**. However, if you prefer an extra-smooth ride you can select the comfort setting* **2**. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressure to the specified maximum **3** ⇒ .

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- ▶ Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- ▶ The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- ▶ Refer to the sticker ⇒ *Fig. 147* for the correct tyre pressures according to the load the vehicle is carrying.
- ▶ If necessary, adjust the tyre pressure.

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

- ▶ Store the new tyre pressures by pressing the button or in the infotainment system*
⇒ *page 144*.
- ▶ Check the pressure of the spare wheel*/compact temporary spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.

WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

- Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Under-inflated tyres flex more and can over-heat at high speeds or when the vehicle is carrying a heavy load. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

- Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.

For the sake of the environment

- Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.
- Driving with the tyre pressures adjusted to the comfort setting* may also result in increased fuel consumption.

Note

We recommend always using the tyre pressure setting ① for partial loads and the setting ③ for full loads.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇒ *page 156*.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇒ .

WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇒ *page 158, After changing a wheel*.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.

- Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself - risk of accident!

Winter tyres

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.

- ▶ Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- ▶ Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.
- ▶ Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇒ . Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- ▶ After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇒ *page 140*.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes the tyres to overheat and can even result in a blow-out – risk of accident!
- Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

Note

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the  symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains

Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions.

- ▶ Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only. This also applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive*.
- ▶ Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
- ▶ Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 13.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).

You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

For technical reasons snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
6Jx15	29 mm	185/60
6Jx16	30 mm	195/50

WARNING

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Your vehicle is fitted with low-profile tyres* as standard equipment. Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel/tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers, speed humps and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇒ *page 140*.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.

Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Summer tyres are not suitable for cold conditions, snow or ice. Use winter or all-season tyres when driving in these conditions ⇒ *page 141*.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.



Fig. 148 Instrument cluster: Indicator lamp with message (example)

The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the tyre pressure are detected on one or more wheels the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp  and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.

Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures by pressing the button or via the infotainment system* ⇒ [page 144](#). Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ [page 140](#).

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

- The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
- The tyre has suffered structural damage.

- The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇒ [page 144](#).
- You are driving with the temporary spare wheel*.

Indicator lamps

 - Loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇒ . Check and change or repair the tyre(s). Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures via the menu display ⇒ [page 144](#).

TPMS Tyre pressure! System fault! - If **TPMS** appears and the indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇒ [page 144](#). If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

- If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.



Note

- If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
- When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction can occur.
- The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to “Audi Genuine Tyres” ►

⇒ page 138. We recommend that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the system.



Fig. 149 Glove box: Button for tyre pressure loss indicator

- ▶ Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇒ page 139.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Vehicles with button in glove box: With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the  button for the tyre pressure loss indicator until you hear a tone.
- ▶ Vehicles with infotainment system: Select function selector button **[CAR]** > control button **(Car) Systems*** > **Servicing & checks** > **Tyre pressure monitoring** > **Store tyre pressures** > **Yes, store now.**

Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Run-flat tyres

Applies to: vehicles with run-flat tyres

Run-flat tyres have reinforced sidewalls which protect the tyre in the event of a loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure loss indicator* shows a loss of pressure in one or more tyres, you can continue driving for at least 30 km if your vehicle is

equipped with run-flat tyres. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the damage repaired.

It is no longer possible to continue driving with run-flat tyres:

- If damage to the tyres (e.g. tears in the sidewalls) becomes apparent.
- If severe vibrations occur, or if the tyre starts overheating and gives off smoke.
- If one of the tyres has been severely damaged in an accident, etc. In this case, there is a risk that parts of the tread may be thrown off and cause damage to important vehicle components.
- If the electronic stabilisation control (ESC) is out of operation or is triggered continuously.
- If the tyre pressure loss indicator* is out of operation.

If you cannot continue driving, even with run-flat tyres, please obtain professional assistance.



WARNING

Run-flat tyres may only be used on vehicles which were originally equipped with this type of tyre.

- The vehicle must have a suitable suspension system and a factory-fitted tyre pressure loss indicator.
- The unauthorised use of run-flat tyres can cause an accident or damage your vehicle. Ask your qualified workshop whether, and if so which, run-flat tyres can be used on your vehicle.
- When using run-flat tyres, it is important that all four wheels have run-flat characteristics. Do not fit normal tyres in combination with run-flat tyres!
- If you cannot avoid driving the vehicle with a deflated tyre or with insufficient tyre pressure, observe the following:
 - Do not drive faster than 80 km/h – higher speeds can cause an accident. Please observe any other applicable laws in the country in which you are travelling.
 - Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering – risk of accident.
 - Vehicle handling could be impaired.

- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.
- Have damaged tyres replaced and the rims checked for damage by a qualified workshop.
- The driver remains responsible for the safety of the vehicle and for restoring the correct tyre pressure and having defective parts replaced. For these reasons you should always adjust your driving to suit the circumstances.

**Note**

- Genuine Audi run-flat tyres can be identified by the marking “AOE” on the sidewall.
- The tyre repair kit ⇒ *page 153* can be used for run-flat tyres.

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General notes

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

Qualified workshops carry stocks of suitable car care materials. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.



WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.



For the sake of the environment

- Please choose care products that are not harmful to the environment.
- Surplus cleaning materials should not be disposed of together with ordinary household waste.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to

the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or sun roof*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material or sensors*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sun roof* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with lots of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.



**WARNING**

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
- To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.
- After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

**CAUTION**

- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
- The decals* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
- Matt-painted vehicle parts:
 - Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
 - Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
 - Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

**For the sake of the environment**

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Notes on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have

special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇒ ⚠.

Cleaning the exterior

Component	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	⇒ page 44, <i>Cleaning windscreen wiper blades</i>
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Sensors	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Ornamental trim/ mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary

Component	Situation	Remedy
Paintwork	Paint damage	Refer to the vehicle data sticker for the paint no. and touch up using a paint pen ⇒ <i>page 182</i>
	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts ⇒ <i>page 146</i>
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Ornamental trim/mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)}
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} (allow to dry before retracting)

Component	Situation	Remedy
Fabrics, leatherette, Alcantara	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent ^{a)}
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent ^{a)} , dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent ^{a)}
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water



WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.



CAUTION

– Headlights/rear lights

- Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge.

- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!
- **Wheels**
 - Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
 - If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.
- **Windows**
 - Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.
- **Ornamental trim/mouldings**
 - Do not use chrome cleaning agents.
- **Paintwork**
 - The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
 - Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
 - Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
 - Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- **Trim**
 - The trim that runs around the panorama sun roof must not be treated with car polish – otherwise the trim may be damaged.
- **Decals**
 - Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
 - Do not polish matt or printed decals – otherwise the decals could be damaged.
 - Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.
- **Displays/instrument cluster**
 - The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
 - Before cleaning, ensure that the instrument cluster is switched off and cool.
 - Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!
- **Control consoles**
 - Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!
- **Seat belts**

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.
- **Fabrics/leatherette/Alcantara**
 - Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/Alcantara fabrics.
 - To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.
 - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
 - Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
 - Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
 - Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.
- **Natural leather**
 - Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
 - Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
 - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
 - Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
 - Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

**Note**

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
- The decals undergo an aging process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact a qualified workshop. Here you will receive advice on necessary measures, for example regarding corrosion protection, servicing and storage. In addition, please observe the general notes on the vehicle battery
⇒ *page 134*.

Mobility

General notes

- ▶ If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- ▶ Apply the handbrake.
- ▶ Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- ▶ Put on a high-visibility vest.
- ▶ Place the warning triangle in a visible location
⇒ page 152.
- ▶ Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).



WARNING

You should note the procedure described above for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle



Fig. 150 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ To open the cover, turn the catch ① ⇒ Fig. 150 and swivel the cover downwards ②.
- ▶ Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as

an Audi Genuine Accessory. This accessory is available from specialist retailers.

First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit



Fig. 151 Under floor panel in luggage compartment: First-aid kit (example)

The first-aid kit is located in a storage compartment under the floor panel.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher



Fig. 152 Front passenger's footwell: Fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is located in the footwell on the front passenger's side (secured in a holder).

- ▶ Remove the fire extinguisher by pressing on the tab marked "PRESS" -arrow-.
- ▶ To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher. ►

⚠ WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

i Note

- The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

Tool kit/tyre repair kit/compressor

Applies to: vehicles with tool kit/tyre repair kit/compressor



Fig. 153 Luggage compartment: Tools and jack* (example)



Fig. 154 Luggage compartment: Tyre repair kit (example)

The tools, tyre repair kit* and compressor* are stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

- Lift up the floor panel until it is fixed in position behind the retaining tabs on the two side sections.
- If necessary, lift out the intermediate section.

- If fitted, take out the spare wheel*
⇒ *page 159*.
- Take out the tools or jack*.

Depending on the version, the tool kit, the tyre repair kit* and the compressor* may be located under the spare wheel, under a further cover or in the tool box. The location of the jack* can vary.

i Note

The jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Please refer to the important safety notes
⇒ *page 152*.
- Apply the handbrake firmly.
- Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇒ *page 153*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 155 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇒ ⚠.

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ①
⇒ Fig. 155
- If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
- If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In these cases, you should seek professional assistance.

WARNING

- Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes.
- If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Immediately contact a doctor.
- Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- If any allergic reactions should occur get medical help immediately.
- Keep the sealant away from children.

Note

- If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
- Observe the expiry date stated on the sealing compound can. If necessary, have the tyre sealant replaced by an Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor*.
- Please observe the relevant regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 156 Tyres: Filling the tyre

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇒ page 153.

Filling the tyre

- ▶ Shake the tyre sealant can well.
- ▶ Screw the enclosed filling hose onto the sealant can as far as it will go. This will automatically pierce the foil sealing the can.
- ▶ Take the valve cap off the tyre valve and use the enclosed valve insert tool to unscrew the valve insert ⇒ Fig. 156.
- ▶ Place the valve insert onto a clean surface.
- ▶ Remove the sealing plug from the filling hose and insert the hose into the tyre valve.
- ▶ Hold the tyre sealant can upside down and fill the complete contents into the tyre.
- ▶ Then disconnect the filling hose and screw the valve insert firmly back into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre

- ▶ Screw the compressor hose (from the tyre repair kit) onto the tyre valve and plug the connector into an electrical socket in the vehicle.
- ▶ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- ▶ If the tyre pressure remains lower than the value specified above, remove the hose and drive 10 metres forwards or backwards at a low speed so that the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇒ . ▶

! WARNING

- Please observe the manufacturers' safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant can.
- If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within six minutes this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- Seek professional assistance if the repair of a tyre puncture is not possible with the sealing compound.

! CAUTION

Do not use the compressor for longer than 6 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- ▶ Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- ▶ After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- ▶ If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

! WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- Vehicle handling could be impaired.
- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

A used can of sealing compound can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

i Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant can at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- ▶ Please refer to the important safety notes ⇒ *page 152.*
- ▶ Apply the handbrake firmly.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position P.
- ▶ If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- ▶ Take out the tools ⇒ *page 153* and spare wheel* ⇒ *page 159.*

! WARNING

If you have to use the jack* on a gradient or off-road track, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing the wheel bolt caps

Fig. 157 Wheel: Hubcap*



Fig. 158 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Applies to: vehicles with hubcaps

- ▶ Insert the hook (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) in the hole in the hubcap ⇒ *Fig. 157*.
- ▶ Pull off the hubcap.

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolt caps

- ▶ Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇒ *Fig. 158*.
- ▶ Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Applies to: vehicles with wheel covers

- ▶ Pull off the wheel cover by hand.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

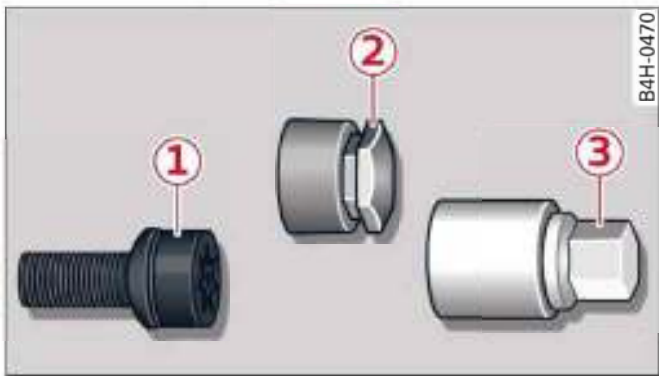


Fig. 159 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To release the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle's tool kit).

- ▶ Pull off the hubcap* or wheel bolt cap* ②.
- ▶ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- ▶ Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the adapter ③.
- ▶ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇒ *page 156*.

Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening the wheel bolts



Fig. 160 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- ▶ Fit the box spanner (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt¹⁾.
- ▶ Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise -arrow-. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.



WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

¹⁾ An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts ⇒ *page 156*.

Raising the vehicle



Fig. 161 Sills: markings (example)



Fig. 162 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- ▶ Always provide a firm base for the jack* on the ground. (The jack can be found in the vehicle's tool kit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Locate the marking (recess or rib) on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ Fig. 161. The jacking point is located behind the marking under the door sill.
- ▶ Wind up the jack* under the jacking point on the door sill until the claw of the jack (A) ⇒ Fig. 162 is directly below the vertical rib under the door sill.
- ▶ Align the jack* so that its claw fits around the rib under the door sill and the movable base plate (B) is flat on the ground. The base plate (B) must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point (A).
- ▶ Raise the vehicle until the defective wheel is clear of the ground.



WARNING

- Make sure the jack* is stable. If the ground underneath the jack* is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in - risk of injury!
- Use only the jack* supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack - risk of injury!
- Apply the jack* only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack* can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
- If work has to be done under the vehicle, ensure that it is safely supported on suitable stands – risk of injury!



CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on the wheel



Fig. 163 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts



Fig. 164 Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily. Before putting on the wheel, inspect the condition of the wheel and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before mounting the wheel.



WARNING

Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts to the required torque using the hexagonal socket - risk of accident!



CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Taking off the wheel

- ▶ Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle's tool kit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇒ Fig. 163.
- ▶ Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle's tool kit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇒ Fig. 164.
- ▶ Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- ▶ Take off the wheel ⇒ ⚠. The mounting pin stays where it is.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇒ page 158.

- ▶ Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- ▶ Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.
- ▶ Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- ▶ Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

If you ever have a puncture and need to fit the spare wheel* in the wrong direction, please drive with extra care because the tyre will not give optimum performance in this situation. Bear this in mind particularly when driving on wet roads.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- ▶ Fit the hubcap or wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▶ Put the tools and jack back in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 108.

- ▶ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▶ On vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator, adjust the tyre pressures and store them ⇒ *page 144*.
- ▶ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 120 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▶ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Spare wheel

Compact temporary spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with compact temporary spare wheel/ spare wheel on rear seat bench

The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. After use, have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. The compact temporary spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

The spare wheel is stowed in different locations in different models:

- A1/A1 Sportback: Compact temporary spare wheel beneath floor panel in luggage compartment ⇒ *page 159*
- S1/S1 Sportback: Spare wheel on rear seat bench¹⁾ ⇒ *page 160*

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.



WARNING

- The tyre pressure of the compact temporary spare wheel must be 4.2 bar.
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
- Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time – risk of accident!
- No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel.

A1/A1 Sportback: Taking out the spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with compact temporary spare wheel



Fig. 165 Luggage compartment: Compact temporary spare wheel

- ▶ Lift up the floor panel until it is fixed in position behind the retaining tabs on the two side sections.
- ▶ If necessary, lift out the intermediate section.
- ▶ Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise ⇒ *Fig. 165*.
- ▶ Take out the spare wheel.

¹⁾ This equipment is not available in certain countries.

S1/S1 Sportback: Taking out the spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with spare wheel on rear seat bench

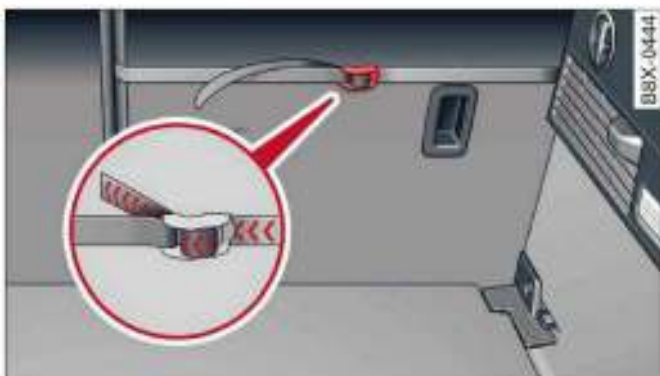


Fig. 166 Luggage compartment: Tensioning strap fastened

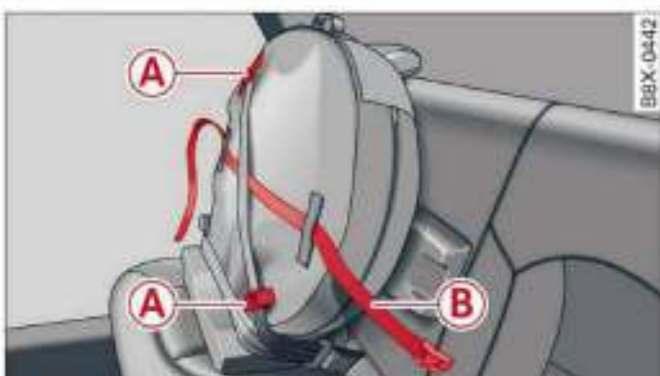


Fig. 167 Rear seat bench: Retainers for seat belt and tensioning strap

The spare wheel is secured on the right rear seat.

- Open the boot lid.
- Unfasten the tensioning strap ⇒ *Fig. 166*.
- Release the backrest ⇒ *page 51* and fold it forwards slightly.
- Carefully pull both ends of the tensioning strap forwards on the rear seat bench.
- Push the backrest up until it engages securely.
- Open the two retainers for the seat belt (A) ⇒ *Fig. 167*.
- Release the seat belt ⇒ *page 115*.
- Take the spare wheel bag out of the carrier together with the tensioning strap.
- Remove the spare wheel from the bag.

S1/S1 Sportback: Stowing the spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with spare wheel on rear seat bench



Fig. 168 Rear seat bench: Carrier for spare wheel bag



Fig. 169 Rear seat bench: Attaching seat belt and tensioning strap

Preparing the spare wheel bag

- Stow the spare wheel in the bag with the text facing upwards.
- Make sure that the two seat belt retainers (A) ⇒ *page 160, Fig. 167* are open and that the tensioning strap is correctly attached to the spare wheel bag (B).

Stowing the spare wheel bag

- Feed the tensioning strap -arrows- ⇒ *Fig. 168* around the spare wheel carrier (1), then insert the latch plate into the buckle belonging to the seat and push it down until it locks securely with an audible click.
- Pull the belt to check that it is securely fastened.
- Position the spare wheel bag on the carrier.
- To secure the spare wheel bag with the seat belt, close the two retainers (A) ⇒ *Fig. 169* and bring the lap belt into the correct position (B).
- Release the backrest ⇒ *page 51* and fold it forwards slightly.

- ▶ Guide both ends of the tensioning strap past the backrest into the luggage compartment -arrows- ⇒ Fig. 169.
- ▶ Push the backrest up until it engages securely ⇒ page 51.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ Fasten the tensioning strap ⇒ page 160, Fig. 166.
- ▶ Pull on the seat belt to check that the spare wheel bag is securely attached.



WARNING

- If the spare wheel bag is loose or incorrectly secured on the rear seat, it could be catapulted through the vehicle during sudden driving/braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident – Risk of injury!
- Always stow the spare wheel bag safely on the rear seat bench. Make sure that the seat belt is properly buckled and that the tensioning strap is securely fastened.

Jump-starting

Before starting the engine

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the vehicle battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 V. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.



WARNING

- When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0°C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads - risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- The engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working here can lead to serious injuries. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment please read and observe the warnings ⇒ page 128.
- Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury). Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:
- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuiting.
- Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery - risk of chemical burns!
- The screw plugs on the battery cells must be screwed in firmly.
- Keep sparks, flame and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
- Do not attach the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or to the brake pipes.



CAUTION

- The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected and the boosting battery could be discharged.
- If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.
- The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

– Please note that the method described below for connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle. If jump-starting another vehicle, you should not connect the negative lead (–) to the negative terminal of the discharged battery, but directly to the engine block or a solid metal part bolted to the engine block. If the battery of the other vehicle does not have a gas vent, there is a risk that a mixture of oxygen and hydrogen gas can accumulate and cause an explosion.

Note

Switch off the car telephone if necessary. Details will be given in the manufacturer's instructions for the car telephone.

Jump-starting the vehicle

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.



Fig. 170 Version 1) Engine compartment with battery: jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle: (A) – Discharged battery, (B) – Boosting battery



Fig. 171 Version 2) Engine compartment with jump-start terminals: jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle: (A) – Discharged battery, (B) – Boosting battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment or luggage compartment (depending on the type

of engine). Vehicles which have a battery in the luggage compartment have a jump-start connection in the engine compartment. The vehicle is always jump-started via the terminals in the engine compartment. The earth point (–) is always on the vehicle's body.

Please observe the general notes on the vehicle battery ⇒ *page 134*.

Please first check which layout your vehicle has: version 1) ⇒ *Fig. 170* or version 2) ⇒ *Fig. 171*.

The terminals are located at the front left of the engine compartment. You may have to open a protective cover on the positive terminal on your vehicle before connecting the cable.

Please note that the described method of connecting the leads is meant for jump-starting your vehicle.

Preparations

1. Please read ⇒ *page 161*, *Before starting the engine* carefully before proceeding.
2. Apply the handbrake and move the gear lever to neutral (on vehicles with manual gearbox) or move the selector lever to P (on vehicles with automatic gearbox).
3. Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition on both vehicles.

Connecting and disconnecting the jump leads

4. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (1) ⇒ *Fig. 170* on your vehicle (A) ⇒  in *Before starting the engine* on *page 161*.
5. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal (2) of the boosting battery (B).
6. Connect one end of the black lead preferably to the earth point or alternatively to the negative battery terminal (3) on the vehicle providing assistance (B).
7. Connect the other end of the black jump lead to the earth point (4) on your vehicle (A).
8. Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment. ►

Starting the engine

9. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
10. Start the engine of the car with the discharged battery and wait two or three minutes until the engine is running smoothly.
11. If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
12. Switch on the blower and the rear window heating on the vehicle which has been jump-started in order to offset excessive voltage which may occur when disconnecting the leads. The headlights must be switched off!
13. When the engines are running, disconnect the leads in exactly the opposite sequence to that described on ⇒ *page 162, Connecting and disconnecting the jump leads*. Make sure that the leads cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
14. Switch off the blower and the rear window heating again.
15. Close any covers that were opened earlier on. Keep well clear of all moving parts in the engine compartment.

Please refer to ⇒  in *Before starting the engine on page 161* and ⇒  in *Before starting the engine on page 161*.

CAUTION

Applies to vehicles with battery in luggage compartment: Do not use the negative battery terminal when jump-starting (this could cause a malfunction in the on-board electrical system).

Note

- Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.
- The vehicle battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases entering the vehicle's interior.

Tow-starting / towing away

General notes

Some experience is required to tow or tow-start a vehicle, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow-start or tow away another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Notes on towing vehicles

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than **50 km/h**.
- The vehicle must not be towed further than **50 km**.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

If one of the axles has to be raised in order to tow the vehicle, please refer to the following table to determine the appropriate axle for your gearbox/drive combination:

	Front-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Manual gearbox	Front or rear axle	Front or rear axle
Automatic gearbox	Front axle	---

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: If the vehicle is to be towed with one of the axles raised, the ignition must be switched off; otherwise the drive train can be damaged.

Notes on tow-starting

Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started.

Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: As a general rule, tow-starting is not recommended. If the engine will not start, it is best to try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ⇒ *page 161* before attempting to tow start. If this is not possible, you can try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle ⇒ *page 165, Tow-starting*.

WARNING

There is a high risk of accidents when towing/tow-starting, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.

CAUTION

- If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.
- Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.

Note

- Please observe the relevant regulations when towing or tow-starting.
- Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: It is not possible to move the selector lever out of position P if the electrical power supply fails. Before the vehicle can be recovered/manoeuvred you must manually release the selector lever ⇒ *page 76*.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇒ *page 163*.

Preparations

- ▶ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇒ *page 165*, ⇒ *page 166*.
- ▶ Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- ▶ The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇒ *page 40*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: Engage the clutch very gently when starting to move and accelerate with particular care.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Accelerate slowly and gradually.
- ▶ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▶ Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇒ .
- ▶ The brake servo only works when the engine is running. The power steering only works when the ignition is on and the vehicle is moving¹⁾. Otherwise you will need to press the brake pedal significantly harder and apply more force to move the steering wheel.
- ▶ Release the parking lock ⇒ *page 71*.
- ▶ Release the handbrake ⇒ *page 69*.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with manual gearbox: Put the gear lever in neutral.
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to position N.
- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.

¹⁾ Important: The vehicle battery must be adequately charged.

WARNING

If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle

Tow-starting

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇒ page 163.

Important: Your vehicle must be fitted with a manual gearbox. If your vehicle has a petrol engine, it must not be towed further than 50 metres ⇒ .

- ▶ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇒ page 165, ⇒ page 166.
- ▶ Engage second or third gear before moving off.
- ▶ Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- ▶ As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch pedal and put the gear lever in neutral.

CAUTION

When tow-starting the vehicle, do not tow it further than 50 metres; otherwise the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Front towline anchorage

The front towline anchorage is only mounted if the vehicle has to be towed.



Fig. 172 Right side of the front bumper: Removing the cap



Fig. 173 Right side of the front bumper: Towline anchorage screwed in

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located behind a cover cap on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle's tool kit ⇒ page 153.
- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards ⇒ Fig. 172. The cover cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage into the screw connection as far as it will go ⇒ Fig. 173 and tighten it with the box spanner.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the tool kit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

Rear towline anchorage

Applies to: A1/A1 Sportback

damaging the bottom section of the bumper.



Fig. 174 Example 1) right side of the rear bumper: Towline anchorage

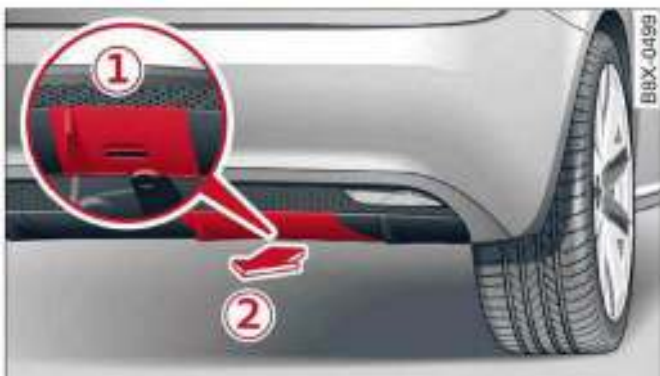


Fig. 175 Example 2) right side of the rear bumper: Towline anchorage on vehicle with end trim

Vehicles without end trim

A fixed towline anchorage is located on the right under the rear bumper ⇒ *Fig. 174*.

Vehicles with end trim

The end trim must be removed in order to use the fixed towline anchorage ⇒ *Fig. 175*.

- Reach into the recess on the underside of the bumper ① ⇒ *Fig. 175* and remove the end trim horizontally ②.
- Place the end trim down on a cloth in the luggage compartment of your vehicle while you are towing the other vehicle.

! CAUTION

- On vehicles with end trim, the end trim must be removed in order to use the towline anchorage; otherwise your vehicle will be damaged.
- If you use a tow-bar, always hook it into the towline anchorage from below to avoid

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Fuses in vehicle interior

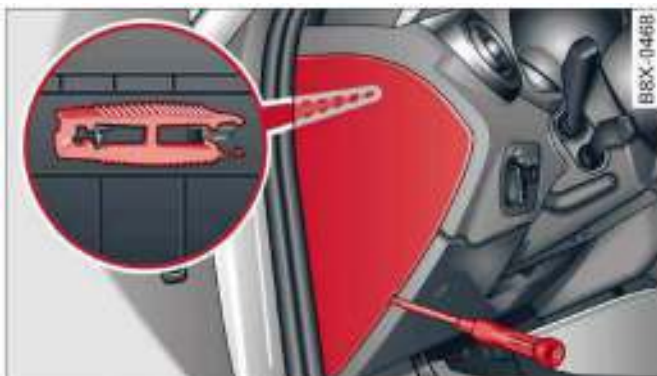


Fig. 176 Dash panel (driver's side on left-hand drive vehicle): Cover



Fig. 177 Dash panel (driver's side on left-hand drive vehicle): Cover*

The fuses are located at the left and right-hand ends of the dash panel and also in the engine compartment.

Changing fuses

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.



Fig. 178 Engine compartment: Cover



Fig. 179 Engine compartment: Releasing cover

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▶ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the failed component.
- ▶ Remove the appropriate cover ⇒ *page 167, Fig. 176* or ⇒ *Fig. 179*.
- ▶ Pull the cover* off (if fitted) in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ *page 167, Fig. 177*.
- ▶ If fitted, pull the coloured plastic frame out of the fuse carrier ⇒ *page 168, Fig. 180* (you can then dispose of the plastic frame).
- ▶ Take the clip from the inside of the cover ⇒ *page 167, Fig. 176* and ⇒ *Fig. 178*.
- ▶ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▶ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same rating.
- ▶ Put the cover back on.

Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
purple	3
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a higher amperage rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

CAUTION

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Note

- Unassigned fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.
- Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
- For right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse carrier can be identified by the colour rather than the letters (A, B, C).

Fuses on driver's side of dash panel

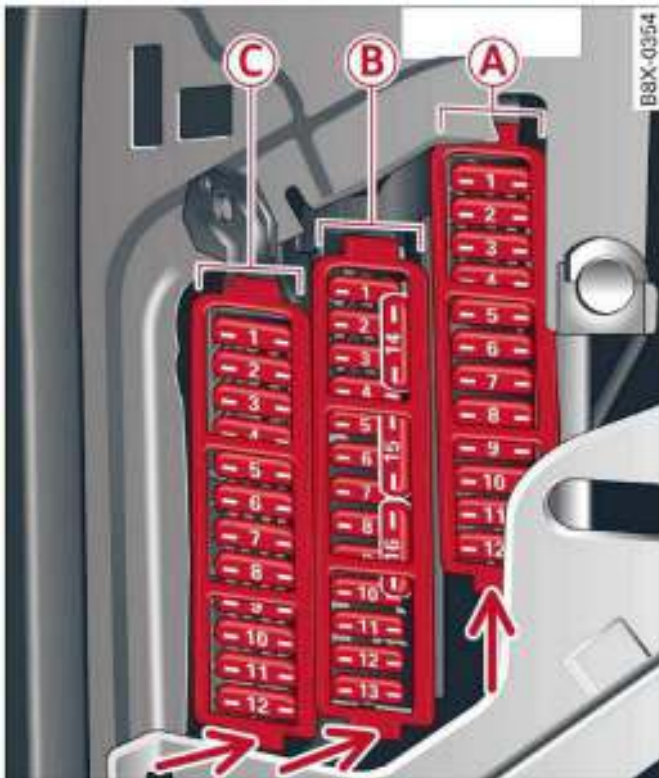


Fig. 180 Dash panel (driver's side): Fuse carrier with plastic frames (illustration shows a left-hand drive vehicle)

Fuse carrier **A** (black)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Infotainment system, DSP amplifier
2	Blower
3	Socket, cigarette lighter
4	Control unit for trailer
5	Gateway
6	Door control unit (passenger side)
7	Door control unit (driver's side)
8	Rear window heating
9	ESC
10	Body control module (power supply)
11	Horn
12	Lighting (left)

Fuse carrier **B** (brown)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Anti-theft alarm system
3	Body control module
4	Four-wheel drive
6	Light sensor/rain sensor, humidity sensor, phone pre-installation, interior lights, reading lights
7	Fuel pump (petrol/diesel)
9	Steering column switch module
10	Light switch
11	Heating, manual/automatic air conditioner, diagnostic connector (terminal 30)
13	Central locking system
14	Socket, cigarette lighter
15	Lighting (right)
16	Engine relay

Fuse carrier **C** (red)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Four-wheel drive
2	ESC
7	Infotainment drive
8	Sound system, TV tuner, card readers, Wi-Fi adapter
9	Instrument cluster

No.	Electrical equipment
10	Power supply for automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror
11	Infotainment
12	Infotainment display

Fuses on passenger's side of dash panel

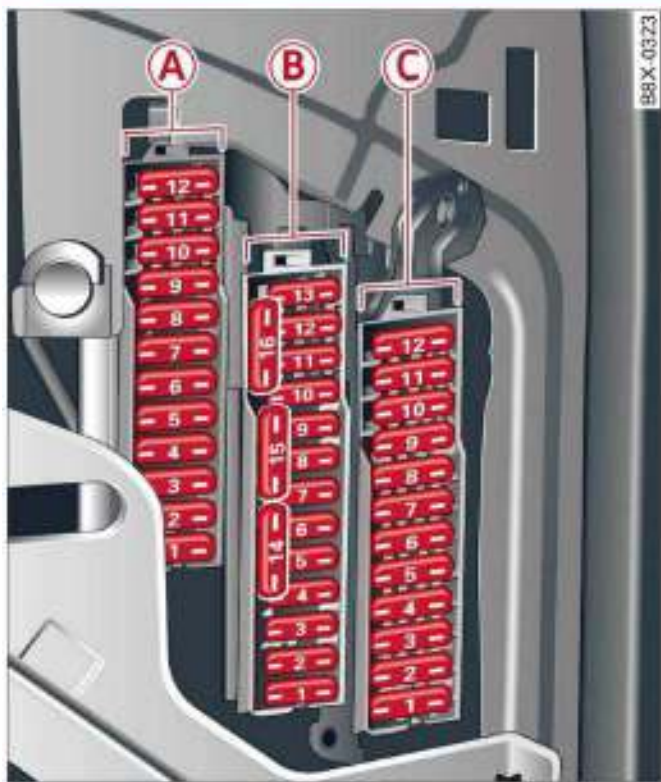


Fig. 181 Dash panel (passenger's side): Fuse carrier (illustration shows a left-hand drive vehicle)

Fuse carrier **A** (black)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Steering column lock
2	Control unit for towing bracket
3	Control unit for towing bracket
4	Control unit for suspension control
5	Headlight washers
6	Interface for special functions
7	Convenience access
9	Panorama sun roof
10	Selector gate (automatic gearbox)

Fuse carrier **B** (brown)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Gearbox control unit, selector gate for automatic gearbox, reversing light switch
2	Air conditioner/heater console, automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror, main beam assist, electrical socket relay coil
3	Gateway
4	Engine sound
5	Rotary light switch, DC-DC converter, interior mirror relay (terminal 15), halogen headlights (left, right), power supply for starter relay coils
6	Light switch
7	Control unit for suspension control
8	Heated washer jets, trailer control unit, switch modules (I) SET, OFF, drive select, (A) OFF
9	Electro-mechanical power steering
10	Fuel pump control unit (petrol engine)
11	Airbag
12	Parking aid
13	Control unit for bi-xenon lights
14	Seat heating
15	Rear window wiper
16	Engine control unit

Fuse carrier **C** (red)

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Electrical/mechanical handling aid
5	Electrical socket for driving school
6	Driving school
10	Electrical/mechanical handling aid

Fuses in engine compartment

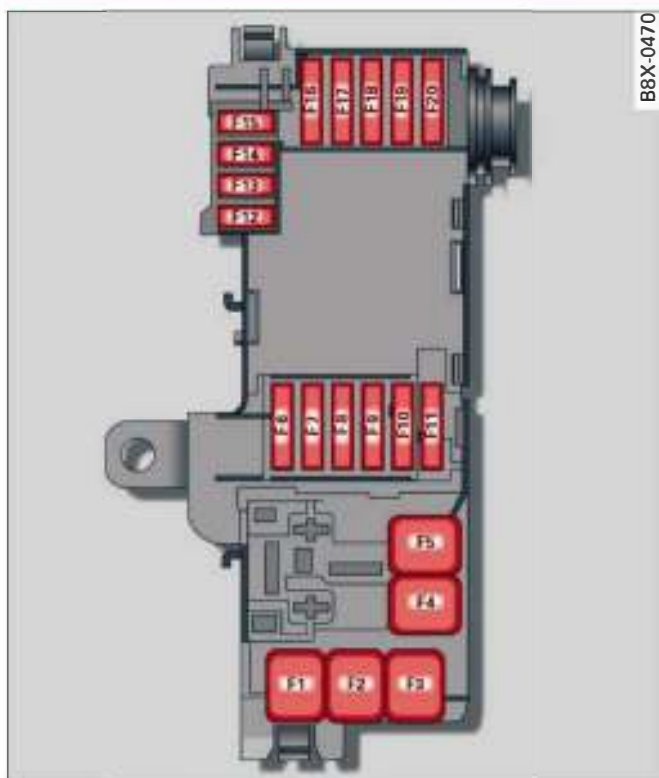


Fig. 182 Engine compartment: Fuse layout

The fuse number is given on the plastic adjacent to the corresponding fuse.

No.	Electrical equipment
F1	Supplementary heater
F2	Radiator fan
F4	Supplementary heater
F5	Supplementary heater
F6	Gearbox control unit
F7	Engine control unit
F8	Windscreen wipers and wiper relay coils
F9	Power supply for battery data module
F12	Oxygen sensors
F13	Brake light switch, clutch pedal sensor
F14	Water recirculation pump, radiator fans, engine components
F15	Starter diagnosis
F16	Power supply (starter)
F17	Engine control unit
F18	Radiator fans, thermal oil level sender, engine components

No.	Electrical equipment
F19	Fuel injectors, camshaft adjuster, ignition coils, engine components
F20	Auxiliary water pump, spark plugs, glow plug control unit, engine components

Bulbs

General notes

Changing bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill.

LED* and xenon* lights are maintenance-free and cannot be changed. For repairs, please contact a qualified workshop.

If you decide to change bulbs in the engine compartment yourself, be aware of the safety risks involved ⇒ ⚠ in *Working on components in the engine compartment* on page 128.



WARNING

- Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm - risk of burns!
- Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.
- Do not change xenon* gas-discharge bulbs yourself. Incorrect handling of the high-voltage element of xenon gas-discharge bulbs can have potentially fatal consequences.
- When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp edges, in particular on the headlight housing.



CAUTION

- Always switch off the ignition before carrying out any work on the electrical system - danger of short circuiting!
- Switch off the lights or parking lights before you change a bulb.
- Take good care to avoid damaging any components.
- Make sure that the covers are correctly seated on the headlights and rear lights. This will ensure that water cannot enter the

housings and cause the lights to malfunction.

- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands; use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, be deposited on the reflector and impair its surface.

CAUTION

When removing or installing the rear light, take care not to cause any damage.

- Removing the rear light in particular can lead to the paintwork or rear light becoming damaged. This is another reason why we recommend having the bulbs changed by a qualified workshop.
- Never use metal tools (e.g. a screwdriver) or sharp or pointed plastic tools to lever out the rear light – risk of damaging the paint.
- Make sure you have a soft cloth ready to place under the glass on the rear light, to avoid any scratches.

For the sake of the environment

A qualified workshop can advise you how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also in that of all other road users.
- Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.

Changing a bulb

Your vehicle is equipped with halogen or xenon* headlights.

You can change some of the bulbs for the exterior lighting yourself:

- Headlight unit (halogen): Bulb for dipped beam headlight (LongLife bulb)
- Headlight unit (halogen): Daytime running lights/side lights/main beam headlights

- Headlight unit: Bulb for turn signal
- Front fog lights
- Rear lights (without LEDs): All bulbs
- Rear lights (with LEDs): Reversing light

Changing defective bulbs requires a certain degree of practical skill. The headlights or rear lights in question have to be removed in order to change the bulbs.

If in doubt, we recommend that you have defective bulbs changed by a qualified workshop or qualified mechanic.

Types of bulbs

You must only replace a bulb with a bulb of the same type. Information regarding e.g. the wattage can be found on the base of the bulb.

The following types of bulb are used for the halogen headlight system:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
Dipped beam headlights (LongLife)	55 W (H7 LL)
Daytime running lights/side lights/main beam headlights	55 W (H15)
Fog lights	35 W (H8)
Turn signals (front)	HY 21 W

The following types of bulb are used for the xenon headlight system:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
Turn signals (front)	PWY 24 W

The following types of bulb are used for the rear lights:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
Turn signals (rear)	W 16 W
Tail light	P 21 W
Brake light	P 21 W
Reversing light	W 16 W
Rear fog light	P 21 W

Changing bulbs in headlight unit

Removing headlight

To change the bulbs, you must remove the headlight. Removing the light requires a certain degree of practical skill.

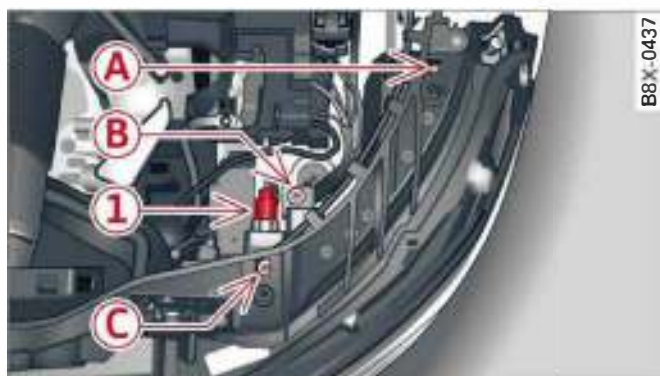


Fig. 183 Front headlight: Securing points and electrical connector



Fig. 184 Headlight unit: Mounting for vent hose

The description for changing the bulb refers to the left headlight; the procedure for the right headlight is similar.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- ▶ Please refer to ⇒  in *General notes on page 170*.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.
- ▶ Unplug the electrical connector ① ⇒ *Fig. 183*. To do this, press in the electrical connector, then press the release point and pull out the connector.
- ▶ Pull the vent hose off the plastic nipple -arrow- ⇒ *Fig. 184*.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver handle and the interchangeable Torx bit out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *page 153*.

- ▶ Slacken the bolts (about 6 turns) ⇒ *Fig. 183*. Use the small Torx bit for bolts ① and ③ and the large Torx bit for bolt ②.
- ▶ Carefully pull out the headlight.

Removing cover for dipped headlight

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights

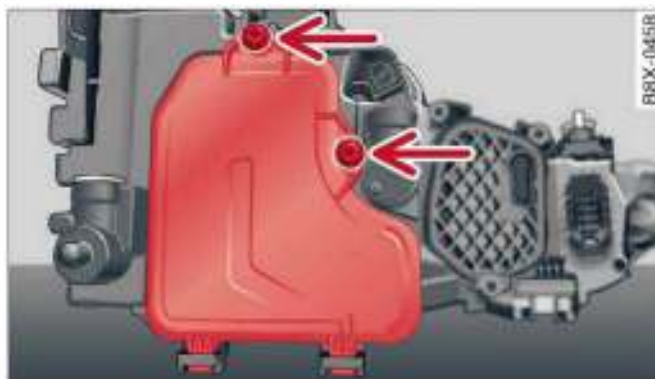


Fig. 185 Headlight: Cover for dipped headlight

- ▶ Remove the headlight ⇒ *page 172*.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver handle and the interchangeable Torx bit out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *page 153*.
- ▶ Remove the bolts -arrows- and detach the cover.

Changing bulb for dipped beam headlight

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights



Fig. 186 Bulb housing: Removing bulb for dipped beam headlight

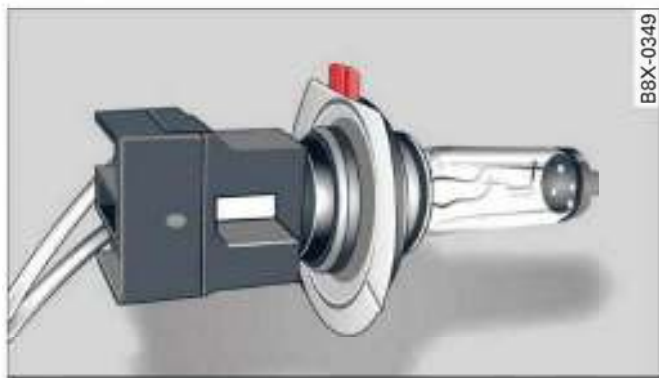


Fig. 187 Bulb with connector - guide lug is highlighted

Removing

- ▶ Take off the cover ⇒ *page 172*.
- ▶ Press the bulb upwards and take it out ⇒ *Fig. 186*.
- ▶ Disconnect the plastic connector from the base of the bulb ⇒ *Fig. 187*, ⇒ ⚠ in *General notes on page 170*.

Installing

- ▶ Plug the plastic connector back in ⇒ *Fig. 187*.
- ▶ If necessary, use a clean cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
- ▶ Insert the new bulb into the housing with the lug pointing upwards ⇒ *Fig. 186*, ⇒ ⚠ in *General notes on page 170*.
- ▶ Press the bulb first upwards, then downwards into the bulb holder so that it engages and is flush with the bulb holder.
- ▶ Look through the headlight lens to check that the bulb is straight.
- ▶ Fit the cover on again and tighten the bolts ⇒ *page 172, Fig. 185*.
- ▶ Re-install the headlight ⇒ *page 176*.



CAUTION

Make sure that the cover is correctly seated to ensure that water cannot enter the headlight housing and to prevent the headlight from malfunctioning.

Removing cover for daytime running lights/side lights/main beam headlights

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights



Fig. 188 Headlight: Cover for daytime running lights/side lights/main beam headlights

- ▶ Remove the headlight ⇒ *page 172*.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver handle and the interchangeable Torx bit out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *page 153*.
- ▶ Remove the bolts -arrows- and detach the cover.

Removing daytime running lights/side lights/main beam headlights

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights



Fig. 189 Bulb holder: Removing the plastic connector



Fig. 190 Bulb housing: Removing the bulb

- Take off the cover ⇒ *page 173*.
- Disconnect the plastic connector from the base of the bulb ⇒ *Fig. 189* ⇒ ⚠ in *General notes on page 170*.
- Turn the connector ⇒ *Fig. 190* anti-clockwise as far as the stop.
- Press the bulb upwards at an angle -arrow- and take it out.

Installing daytime running lights/side lights/main beam headlights

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights



Fig. 191 Bulb housing: Fitting the bulb



Fig. 192 Bulb housing: Fitting the bulb

- If necessary, use a clean cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
- Fit the new bulb in the bulb housing. Press the bulb first upwards Ⓐ ⇒ *Fig. 191*, then downwards Ⓑ into the bulb holder so that it engages ⇒ ⚠ in *General notes on page 170*.
- Turn the connector ⇒ *Fig. 192* clockwise as far as it will go.
- Look through the headlight lens to check that the bulb is straight.
- Plug the plastic connector back in.
- Fit the cover on again and tighten the bolts ⇒ *page 172, Fig. 185*.
- Re-install the headlight ⇒ *page 176*.

! CAUTION

Make sure that the cover is correctly seated to ensure that water cannot enter the headlight housing and to prevent the headlight from malfunctioning.

Removing cover for turn signal

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights



Fig. 193 Headlight: Cover for turn signal

- Remove the headlight ⇒ *page 172*.

- ▶ Turn the cover as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 193.
- ▶ Take off the cover.

Changing bulb for turn signal

Applies to: vehicles with halogen headlights



Fig. 194 Bulb housing: Removing bulb for turn signal



Fig. 195 Bulb housing: Removing the bulb

Removing

- ▶ Take off the cover ⇒ page 174.
- ▶ Pull out the bulb holder ⇒ Fig. 194, ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 170.
- ▶ Press the defective bulb gently into the bulb carrier, then turn it anti-clockwise ① ⇒ Fig. 195 and remove it from the holder ②.

Installing

- ▶ Fit the new bulb by pressing it into the bulb holder and turning it clockwise until it engages ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 170.
- ▶ If necessary, use a clean cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
- ▶ Install the bulb holder.
- ▶ Fit the cover back on and turn it clockwise as far as the stop ⇒ page 174, Fig. 193.
- ▶ Re-install the headlight ⇒ page 176.

! CAUTION

Make sure that the cover is correctly seated to ensure that water cannot enter the headlight housing and to prevent the headlight from malfunctioning.

Changing bulb for turn signal

Applies to: vehicles with xenon headlights



Fig. 196 Headlight (rear view): Cover for turn signal



Fig. 197 Bulb housing: Removing bulb for turn signal

Removing bulb for turn signal

- ▶ Remove the headlight ⇒ page 172.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver handle and the interchangeable Torx bit out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ page 153.
- ▶ Remove the bolts -arrows- ⇒ Fig. 196 and detach the cover.
- ▶ Take hold of the black plastic connector and pull the bulb out of the headlight housing ① ⇒ Fig. 197.
- ▶ Take the bulb out of the plastic connector ② ⇒ Fig. 197 ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 170.

Installing bulb for turn signal

- ▶ Push the new bulb into the black plastic connector so that it is securely seated ⇒ ⚠ in General notes on page 170.

- ▶ If necessary, use a clean cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
- ▶ Carefully insert the bulb into the headlight housing so that you feel the plastic connector engage.
- ▶ Bolt on the cover ⇒ *Fig. 196*.
- ▶ Re-install the headlight ⇒ *page 176*.

! CAUTION

Make sure that the cover is correctly seated to ensure that water cannot enter the headlight housing and to prevent the headlight from malfunctioning.

! CAUTION

- If water is allowed to collect in the headlight unit, this can lead to a headlight malfunction or damage. This can be avoided by ensuring that the vent hose is correctly seated.
- Make sure that the rubber seal on the outside of the headlight is correctly seated to prevent damage to the headlight and/or vehicle body (e.g. wing panel).

i Note

The stop bolts ensure that the headlight is seated properly. Please do not interfere with the settings of the stop bolts.

Installing headlight

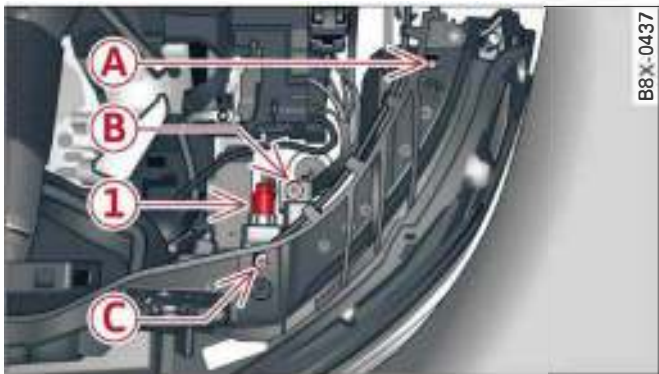


Fig. 198 Front headlight: Securing points and electrical connector



Fig. 199 Headlight unit: Mounting for vent hose

- ▶ Check that the rubber seal is secured on the outside of the headlight.
- ▶ Carefully slide the headlight all the way in ⇒ ⚠ *in General notes on page 170*.
- ▶ Push the vent hose onto the plastic nipple -arrow- ⇒ *Fig. 199* as far as the stop.
- ▶ Hold the front of the headlight in place and plug in the electrical connector (1) ⇒ *Fig. 198*.
- ▶ Check whether the new bulb is working.

- ▶ Tighten the bolts ⇒ *Fig. 198*. Use the small Torx bit for bolts (A) and (C) and the large Torx bit for bolt (B).

Changing bulb for front fog light

Removing fog light

Applies to: vehicles with front fog lights



Fig. 200 Front fog light: Removing trim



Fig. 201 Front fog light: Securing screws

The following instructions for changing the bulb refer to the fog light on the left side. Follow the same procedure for changing the bulb on the right side.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- ▶ Take hold of the trim at the recess provided and pull it off carefully in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 200.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver handle and the interchangeable Torx bit out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ page 153.
- ▶ Slacken off the securing screws -arrows- ⇒ Fig. 201 and take the fog light out of the bumper.

! CAUTION

The trim cover is secured to the bumper by several retaining hooks. Do not use force when removing the trim cover to avoid damaging it.

Changing a bulb

Applies to: vehicles with front fog lights



Fig. 202 Fog light housing removed

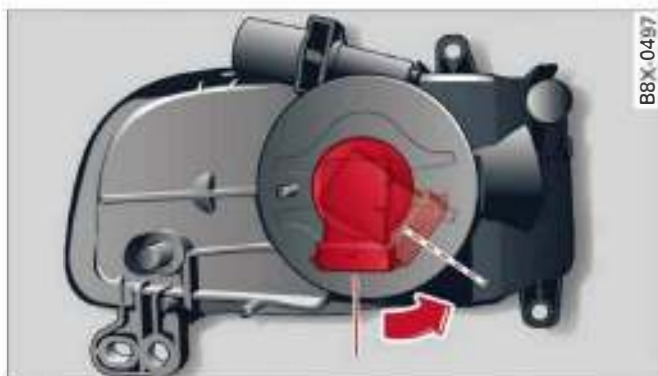


Fig. 203 Bulb housing: Changing the bulb

- ▶ Press down the tab ① ⇒ Fig. 202 and unplug the electrical connector ②.

- ▶ Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and take it out ⇒ Fig. 203.
- ▶ Insert the new bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as the stop.
- ▶ Re-install all the parts in the reverse sequence.
- ▶ Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing bulbs for rear lights

Removing rear lights

To change the bulbs, you must remove the rear light. Removing the light requires a certain degree of practical skill.



Fig. 204 Boot lid: Location of the retaining screw for the rear light



Fig. 205 Removing the rear light

The following instructions for changing the bulb refer to the rear light unit on the left side. Follow the same procedure for changing the rear light unit on the right side.

Preparations

- ▶ Check which of the bulbs is defective.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver and the box spanner out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ page 153.
- ▶ Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert.

Removing covers

- Open the boot lid.
- To remove the large cover, insert the screwdriver into the slot -arrow- and pull off the cover ⇒ Fig. 204.
- Remove the two small covers by hand (please do not use tools).

Removing rear light

- Using the box spanner, slacken nuts ① to ④ ⇒ Fig. 205. You can use the screwdriver as a handle for turning by inserting it through the hole on the side of the box spanner. A retainer will come loose when you slacken nut ④. This retainer must be refitted later on before you install the rear light again.
- Close the boot lid.
- Take out the rear light and unplug the electrical connector. Take care that the rear light does not chafe against the boot lid.
- Place down the rear light.

Removing bulb carrier

Applies to: vehicles without LED rear lights

When changing a bulb, you must first remove the bulb carrier.

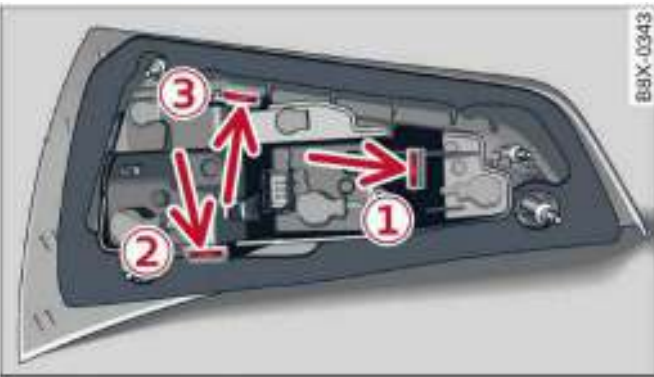


Fig. 206 Securing tabs between bulb carrier and rear light

The following instructions for changing the bulb apply to **lights without LEDs**.

There are three securing tabs on the inside of the rear light.

- Release the securing tabs. To do so, push the securing tabs away from the bulb carrier in the correct order (from ① to ③ ⇒ Fig. 206). Lift the bulb carrier while doing so.
- Detach the bulb carrier.

► Renew the defective bulb ⇒ page 178.

Changing a bulb

Applies to: vehicles without LED rear lights

All bulbs can be changed easily on the bulb carrier.

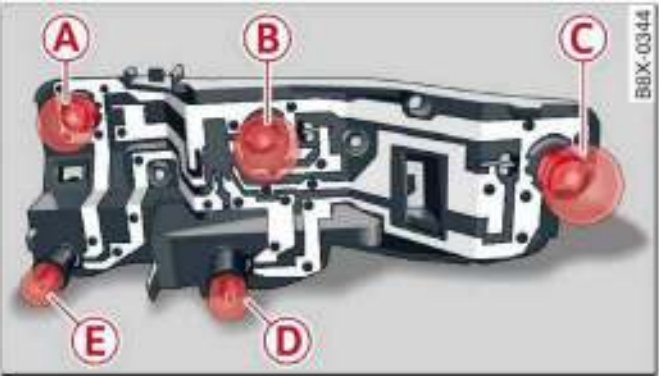


Fig. 207 Position of the bulbs on the bulb carrier

The table below gives an overview of the bulb positions.

- To remove bulbs ①, ② and ③, press them gently into the bulb carrier and then turn them anti-clockwise. To remove bulbs ④ and ⑤, pull them out.
- To install bulbs ①, ② and ③, press them gently into the bulb carrier and then turn them clockwise as far as the stop. To install bulbs ④ and ⑤, insert the bulbs.
- Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
- Re-install the bulb carrier.

Position of bulbs

Item ⇒ Fig. 207	Bulb function
A	Tail light/brake light
B	Tail light/brake light
C	Tail light/rear fog light (driver's side)
D	Reversing light (passenger's side)
E	Turn signal

Changing a bulb

Applies to: vehicles with LED rear lights

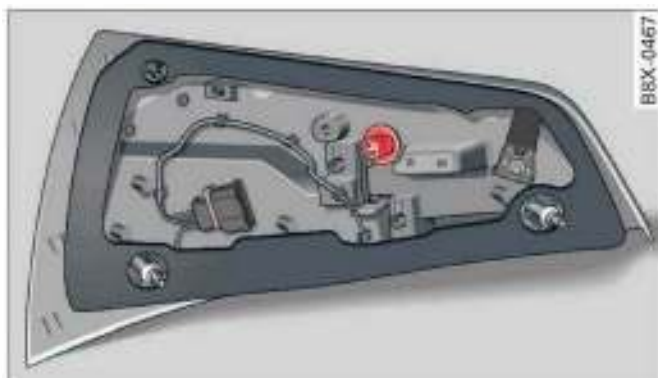


Fig. 208 Rear light: Position of reversing light

If your vehicle has **lights with LEDs**, the only bulbs you can change yourself are the reversing light bulbs ⇒ Fig. 208.

- ▶ Turn the bulb holder and take it out together with the bulb.
- ▶ Lightly press the defective bulb into the bulb carrier, then turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ▶ Fit the new bulb, pressing it into the bulb holder and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
- ▶ Use a cloth to remove any fingerprints from the glass part of the bulb.
- ▶ Insert the bulb holder again and turn it until it is securely seated.

Installing rear light



Fig. 209 Rear light with retainer already installed



Fig. 210 Boot lid: Location of the retaining screw for the rear light

- ▶ Fit the retainer and tighten the nut slightly ⇒ Fig. 209.
- ▶ Plug in the electrical connector.
- ▶ Insert the rear light.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ Tighten the nuts hand-tight in the correct order (1 to 4) using the box spanner.
- ▶ To use the screwdriver as a handle for turning, insert it through the hole on the side of the box spanner and then carefully tighten the nuts in the correct order (1 to 4).
- ▶ Fit the three covers.
- ▶ Make sure that all bulbs for the rear lights are working.
- ▶ Put the screwdriver and box spanner back into the tool kit.

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Accessories and replacement parts

Always ask your dealer or specialist retailer for advice before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Your car is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety. For this reason, we recommend that you ask your Audi dealer for advice before fitting accessories or replacement parts. Audi dealers have the latest information from the manufacturer and can recommend accessories and replacement parts which are suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

We recommend you to use only **Audi accessories** and **Audi Genuine Parts**. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety. Audi dealers have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed properly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Audi cannot judge or assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of non-genuine products - even though in some instances, these parts may have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or accompanied by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven (e.g. cruise control system or electronically-controlled suspension) must be approved for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's approval symbol).

If any **additional electrical components** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), these must bear the **CE** mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union).



WARNING

Never attach accessories (such as cup holders or telephone brackets) to the surfaces covering the airbag units or the areas around the airbags: this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.

Modifications

Modifications must always be carried out according to our specifications.

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctioning. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other systems may be affected by the faults. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate the type approval for your vehicle.

You will appreciate that your Audi dealer cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

We recommend that all work should be performed by an Audi workshop using **Audi Genuine Parts**.



WARNING

- Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents.
- Do not use an additional or replacement number plate holder other than the original one fitted at the front of the vehicle.

Radio transmitters and business equipment

Transmitters

An external aerial is required in order to operate radio equipment inside the vehicle. The maximum range of the equipment can only be achieved with an external aerial.

Retrofit installations of radio transmitters in the vehicle are subject to official approval and can affect the type approval for your vehicle. In extreme cases this could mean that you lose the type approval for your vehicle.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.

Business equipment

Retrofit installation of business or other equipment in the vehicle is permitted, provided the equipment cannot interfere with the driver's immediate control of the vehicle. Any such equipment must carry the **CE** mark. Any retrofit equipment that could influence the driver's control of the vehicle must have a type approval for road vehicles and must carry the **e** mark.



Note

Please observe the relevant regulations and follow the instructions in the operating manual for the radio equipment.



WARNING

- Loose or incorrectly secured radio equipment could be catapulted through the vehicle during sudden driving/braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.
- Always ensure that radio equipment is properly secured outside the deployment area of the airbags or stowed safely while the vehicle is moving.
- Mobile telephones or radio equipment which are operated inside the vehicle without a correctly installed external aerial can create excessive magnetic fields that could cause a health hazard.



CAUTION

- If you use radio equipment in the car without an external aerial, the electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed the recommended limits. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.
- Do not operate radio equipment in the vehicle unless an external aerial is properly connected.

Technical data

Vehicle identification data

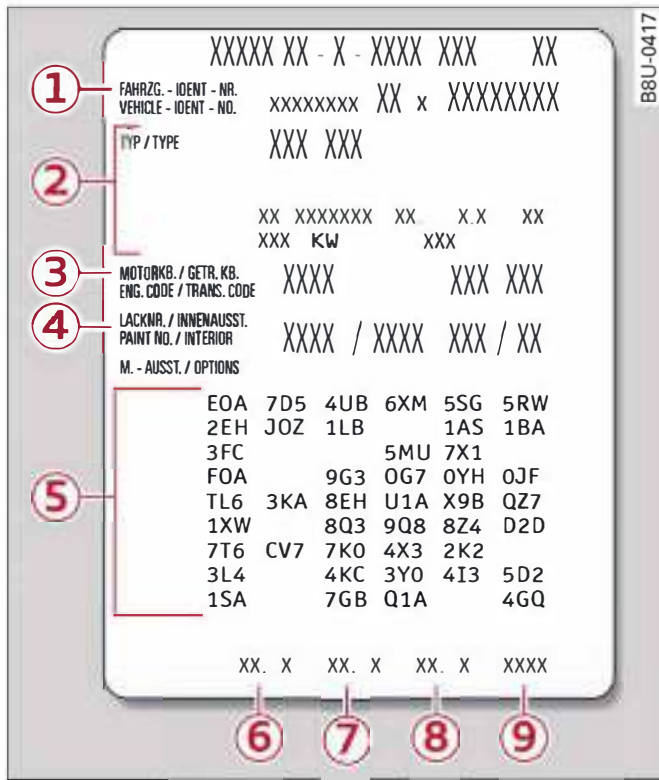


Fig. 211 Vehicle data sticker

Chassis number

The chassis number can be found at the following locations:

- On the infotainment system*: Select the function selector button **CAR** > control button **(Car)* Systems > Servicing & checks > Chassis number**
- Under the windscreen on the driver's side*
- On the vehicle data sticker
- On the right side of the engine compartment

Type plate

The type plate is located on the right A-pillar. Vehicles for certain export countries have no type plate.

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker ⇒ Fig. 211 is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

One section of the vehicle data sticker is attached to the inside cover of the Service Schedule before the vehicle is handed over.

The sticker lists the following data:

- ① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
- ② Vehicle type / engine power / gearbox type
- ③ Engine and gearbox code letters
- ④ Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
- ⑤ Optional equipment codes

Fuel consumption and emissions¹⁾

Information on the vehicle's fuel consumption and emissions is given at the bottom of the vehicle data sticker:

- ⑥ Urban cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
- ⑦ Extra-urban cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
- ⑧ Combined cycle consumption (ltr./100 km)
- ⑨ Combined CO₂ emissions (g/km)

The specified values were determined in accordance with the required test procedures. The figures do **not** refer to a particular individual vehicle, but are intended solely as a basis for comparison between different types of vehicle. The actual consumption may be different and depends, in particular, on special equipment, vehicle loading, driving style, road and traffic conditions, environmental conditions and the state of the vehicle.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different export versions and test procedures.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct. ►

¹⁾ The figures are not available for all export versions. In this case, the fields contain place holders, for example 99.9.

 Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
A1	3973	1740	1906	1416
A1 Sportback	3973	1746	1906	1422
S1	3975	1740	1906	1417
S1 Sportback	3975	1746	1906	1423

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank	45 ltr.
Windscreen washer	3.5 ltr.
Windscreen and headlight washer system* (front-wheel drive)	5 ltr.
Windscreen and headlight washer system* (four-wheel drive)	5.4 ltr.

Weights

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is 75 kg.

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU reg-

ulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

A1

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
1.0 TFSI, 60 kW	1110	1485	835	730
1.0 TFSI, 70 kW, ultra	1110 / 1140 ^{a)}	1485 / 1515 ^{a)}	835 / 870 ^{a)}	730 / 725 ^{a)}
1.4 TFSI, 92 kW	1155 / 1190 ^{a)}	1530 / 1565 ^{a)}	860 / 880 ^{a)}	740 / 765 ^{a)}
1.4 TFSI, 110 kW, cylinder on demand	1195 / 1205 ^{a)}	1570 / 1580 ^{a)}	880 / 890 ^{a)}	770
1.8 TFSI, 141 kW	1255	1630	935	775

Technical data

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
1.4 TDI, 66 kW	1165 / 1195 ^{a)}	1540 / 1570 ^{a)}	880 / 900 ^{a)}	760
1.6 TDI, 85 kW	1225 / 1250 ^{a)}	1600 / 1625 ^{a)}	930 / 950 ^{a)}	755

^{a)} The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

A1 Sportback

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
1.0 TFSI, 60 kW	1135	1580	850	805
1.0 TFSI, 70 kW, ultra	1135 / 1165 ^{a)}	1580 / 1610 ^{a)}	850 / 885 ^{a)}	805 / 800 ^{a)}
1.4 TFSI, 92 kW	1180 / 1215 ^{a)}	1625 / 1660 ^{a)}	875 / 895 ^{a)}	815 / 840 ^{a)}
1.4 TFSI, 110 kW, cylinder on demand	1220 / 1230 ^{a)}	1645 / 1655 ^{a)}	900 / 910 ^{a)}	830
1.8 TFSI, 141 kW	1280	1705	955	835
1.4 TDI, 66 kW	1205 / 1220 ^{a)}	1640 / 1665 ^{a)}	900 / 915 ^{a)}	835
1.6 TDI, 85 kW	1250 / 1275 ^{a)}	1695 / 1720 ^{a)}	945 / 960 ^{a)}	835 / 830 ^{a)}

^{a)} The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

S1

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
2.0 TFSI, 170 kW, quattro	1390	1765	955	855

S1 Sportback

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
2.0 TFSI, 170 kW, quattro	1415	1790	960	870

Trailer weights

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.

The vertical load exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 50 kg.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

A1

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradients up to 8%	With brakes on gradients up to 12%
1.0 TFSI, 60 kW	775	550	1200	1000
1.0 TFSI, 70 kW, ultra	775 / 770 ^{a)}	550 / 570 ^{a)}	1200	1000

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradients up to 8%	With brakes on gradients up to 12%
1.4 TFSI, 92 kW	785 / 810 ^{a)}	570 / 590 ^{a)}	1200	1200
1.4 TFSI, 110 kW, cylinder on demand	815	590 / 600 ^{a)}	1200	1200
1.8 TFSI, 141 kW	820	620	1200	1200
1.4 TDI, 66 kW	805	580 / 590 ^{a)}	1200	1200
1.6 TDI, 85 kW	800	610 / 620 ^{a)}	1200	1200

^{a)} The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

A1 Sportback

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradients up to 8%	With brakes on gradients up to 12%
1.0 TFSI, 60 kW	850	560	1200	1000
1.0 TFSI, 70 kW, ultra	850 / 845 ^{a)}	560 / 580 ^{a)}	1200	1000
1.4 TFSI, 92 kW	860 / 885 ^{a)}	590 / 600 ^{a)}	1200	1200
1.4 TFSI, 110 kW, cylinder on demand	875	610	1200	1200
1.8 TFSI, 141 kW	880	640	1200	1200
1.4 TDI, 66 kW	880	600 / 610	1200	1200
1.6 TDI, 85 kW	880 / 875 ^{a)}	620 / 630 ^{a)}	1200	1200

^{a)} The value before the stroke applies to the manual gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox.

Engine data

A1

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
1.0 TFSI, 60 kW	60 / 3500 – 5500	160 / 1500 – 3500	177
1.0 TFSI, 70 kW, ultra	70 / 5000 – 5500	160 / 1500 – 3500	186
1.4 TFSI, 92 kW	92 / 5000	200 / 1400 – 4000	204
1.4 TFSI, 110 kW, cylinder on demand	110 / 5000	250 / 1500 – 3500	215
1.8 TFSI, 141 kW	141 / 5400	250 / 1250 – 5300	234
1.4 TDI, 66 kW	66 / 3250	230 / 1750 – 2500	182
1.6 TDI, 85 kW	85 / 3500 – 4000	250 / 1500 – 3000	200

A1 Sportback

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
1.0 TFSI, 60 kW	60 / 3500 – 5500	160 / 1500 – 3500	177
1.0 TFSI, 70 kW, ultra	70 / 5000 – 5500	160 / 1500 – 3500	186
1.4 TFSI, 92 kW	92 / 5000	200 / 1400 – 4000	204
1.4 TFSI, 110 kW, cylinder on demand	110 / 5000	250 / 1500 – 3500	215
1.8 TFSI, 141 kW	141 / 5400	250 / 1250 – 5300	234
1.4 TDI, 66 kW	66 / 3250	230 / 1750 – 2500	182
1.6 TDI, 85 kW	85 / 3500 – 4000	250 / 1500 – 3000	200

S1

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
2.0 TFSI, 170 kW, quattro	170 / 6000	370 / 1600 – 3000	250

S1 Sportback

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (in km/h)
2.0 TFSI, 170 kW, quattro	170 / 6000	370 / 1600 – 3000	250

Numbers and Symbols

360° display 90

A

A/C (automatic air conditioner) 58

A/C (manual air conditioner) 56

ABS

see Anti-lock brake system 93

Accelerator pedal 108

Accessories 49, 180

Active Cylinder Management 25

Advanced gear-change indicator (efficiency program) 24

Advanced key

see Convenience key 64

Airbag 117

Deactivating front passenger's airbag ... 124

Front airbags 118

Head-protection airbag 122

Side airbags 121

Warning lamp 17

Air conditioner

Drive select 87

Air conditioner (automatic) 55

AUTO (automatic mode) 58

Controls 58

Description 55

Supplementary heater 55

Synchronisation 58

Air conditioner (manual) 55

Controls 56

Description 55

Supplementary heater 55

Air distribution, adjusting

Automatic air conditioner 59

Heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner 56

Air outlets, adjusting

Automatic air conditioner 59

Heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner 56

Air recirculation mode

Automatic air conditioner 59

Heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner 57

Alarm system

see Anti-theft alarm system 32

All-season tyres

see All-weather tyres 141

All-weather lights 37

All-weather tyres 141

Alterations to the vehicle 180

Alternator (warning lamp) 16

Anti-dazzle exterior mirrors 42

Anti-dazzle interior mirror 42

Anti-freeze

Coolant 132

Windscreen washer system 136

Anti-lock brake system 93

Indicator lamp 17

Anti-theft alarm system 32

Anti-theft wheel bolts 156

Armrest, front 47

Ashtray 48

ASR

see Traction control system 93

Audi drive select 86

AUTO

Automatic air conditioner 58

Automatic headlights 37

Auto Lock (central locking system) 26

Automatic air conditioner

see Air conditioner (automatic) 55, 58

Automatic gearbox 70

Back-up programme 76

Downhill speed control 74

Driving tips 73

Kick-down 75

Manual gear selection 74

Manual release of selector lever 76

Selector lever lock 71

Selector lever positions 71

Steering wheel with paddle levers 74

tiptronic 74

Average fuel consumption 23

Average speed 23

Axle loads 183

B

Background lighting	40	Caps for wheel bolts, removing	155
Bag	53	Car care	
Bandages		Washing/cleaning	146
see First-aid kit	152	Car keys	27
Battery	134	Catalytic converter	127
Charge	97	Central locking system	26
Charging	16, 135	Boot lid	33
Indicator lamp	16	Central locking switch	30
Power management	97	Convenience key	29
Winter conditions	134	Locking doors manually	31
see also Battery	134	Remote control key	28
Belts		Security central locking	31
see Seat belts	111	Settings	31
Bicycle rack (trailer)	80	Centre console lighting, adjusting brightness	41
Biodiesel	125	Cetane number (diesel)	125
Bioethanol (fuel)	125	Changing bulbs (rear lights)	177
Blower		Chassis number	130, 182
Automatic air conditioner	59	Child lock	
Heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner	56	Electric windows	34
Boot lid		Rear doors	34
Manual release	34	Windows	34
Opening/closing	33	Child seats	103
Warning lamp	17	Categories	105
Brake fluid		Fitting	106
Checking brake fluid level	133	ISOFIX	106
Brakes	95	ISOFIX and top tether	107
Brake assist system	93	Side airbags	104
Brake fluid	133	Cigarette lighter	49
Brake pedal	108	Cleaning	146
Brake servo	95	Cleaning/de-icing windows	148
Driving away on a slope	70	Cleaning/treating natural leather	149
Handbrake	69	Cleaning Alcantara	149
Indicator lamp	19	Cleaning carbon parts	148, 149
New brake pads	95	Cleaning controls and displays	148
Warning lamp	15	Cleaning decals	148
Bulb failure		Cleaning fabrics	149
Changing bulbs	170	Cleaning leatherette	149
Indicator lamp	19	Cleaning plastic parts	148
Bulbs, changing	170	Clock	12
		Closing	
		Bonnet	129
		Panorama sun roof	35
		Windows	34
		Coasting mode	75
		Coat hooks	50
		Colour code	182

C

Capacities

Fuel tank	183
Washer fluid reservoir	183

Coming home	39	Fuel	125
Compact temporary spare wheel	159	Preheating (glow plugs)	62
Compartments	50	Warning lamp	18
Consumption (fuel)	23, 182	Dimensions	
Controls and displays (overview)	8	Vehicle dimensions	183
Control units	98	Dipped headlights	37
Convenience key		Directional tread (tyres)	158
Indicator lamp	66	Display	
Locking and unlocking the vehicle	29	Cleaning	148
Starting engine	64	Distance covered	23
Switching off engine	65	Door catches, bonnet and boot lid warning ..	21
Switching on ignition	64	Doors	
Convenience open/close	35	Child lock	34
Cooling mode		Locking manually	31
Automatic air conditioner	58	Warning lamp	17
Cooling mode (manual air conditioner)	56	Door safelock	32
Cooling system		Downhill speed control	74
Anti-freeze	132	Driver information system	21
Checking coolant level	133	CD/radio display	21
Coolant temperature	10	Controls on multi-function steering wheel ..	22
Topping up coolant	133	Controls on windscreen wiper lever	22
Warning lamp	16	Door catches, bonnet and boot lid warning ..	21
Cruise control system		Driver messages	14, 22
Adjusting stored speed	86	Efficiency program	23
Overriding set speed	86	Gear-change indicator	13, 24
Pre-selecting a speed	86	On-board computer	23
Switching off	86	Outside temperature display	21
Switching on	85	Overview	21
Cup holders	50	Service interval display	136
Current fuel consumption	23	Warning and indicator lamps	14
Cylinder management system		Drive select	
see Active Cylinder Management	25	Indicator lamp	20
		see <i>also</i> Audi drive select	86
D		Driving away on a slope (hill hold assist) ...	70
Date	12	Driving on right/left	40
Daytime running lights	37	Driving through water	60
Deactivating front passenger's airbag	124	Driving time	23
Defrosting (windows)		Dust filter	
Automatic air conditioner	59	see Pollution filter	55
Heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner	56	E	
DEF (instrument cluster)	11	Economical driving	60
Diagnostic connection	98	Economy tips (efficiency program)	25
Diesel		EDL	
Diesel particulate filter	18, 127	see Electronic differential lock	93
Engine oil	130		

Efficiency program		
Economy tips	25	
Energy consumers	24	
Gear-change indicator	24	
Overview	23	
Electrical socket	49	
Electric windows	34	
Child lock	34	
Malfunction	35	
Electro-mechanical power steering	96	
Indicator lamp	96	
Electronic differential lock	93	
Indicator lamp	17	
Electronic immobiliser	27	
Electronic stabilisation control	93	
Indicator lamp	17	
Emission control systems		
Catalytic converter	127	
Diesel particulate filter	127	
Emission control system (indicator lamp)	18	
Emissions	182	
Energy consumers (efficiency program)	24	
Engine		
Coolant	132	
Jump-starting	161	
Power output	185	
Preheating (glow plugs)	62	
Start/stop system	67	
Starting (convenience key)	64	
Starting (ignition lock)	62	
Switching off (convenience key)	65	
Switching off (ignition lock)	63	
Engine compartment		
Bonnet (warning lamp)	17	
Layout	130	
Opening/closing bonnet	129	
Safety notes	128	
Engine management (indicator lamp)	18	
Engine oil	130	
Changing	130	
Checking oil level	131	
Consumption	131	
Indicator lamp	18, 19	
Oil dipstick	131	
Service intervals	130	
Topping up	131	
Warning lamp	16	
Engine speed governing (indicator lamp)	18	
Engine start/stop mode		
see Start/stop system	68	
Environmental tips		
Filling the tank	126	
Leaks	129	
Minimising pollution	60	
Roof carrier	54	
EPC (engine management)	18	
ESC		
Multicollision brake assist system	93	
see also Electronic stabilisation control	93	
Ethanol (fuel)	125	
Event data recorder	98	
Event memory	98	
Exterior lights	37	
Changing bulbs	170	
Exterior mirrors		
Adjusting	41	
Anti-dazzle setting	42	
Heating	41	
F		
FAME (fuel)	125	
Fastening rings	52, 109	
Filling the tank	126	
Fuel gauge	11	
Opening fuel tank flap	126	
Releasing tank flap manually	127	
Tank capacity	183	
Fire extinguisher	152	
First-aid kit	152	
Fixed oil change service	130	
Flexible oil change service	130	
Floods, driving through water	60	
Floor mats	108	
Fog lights	37	
Four-wheel drive	96	
Front fog lights		
Changing bulbs	176	
Front seats		
see Seats	46	
Front window		
see Windscreen	43	

- Fuel
 Consumption 182
 Current fuel consumption 23
 Fuel economy (coasting mode) 75
 Fuel gauge 10, 11
 Indicator lamp 19
 Saving fuel 60, 87
 Tank capacity 183
 Fuel range 23
 Fuses
 Changing 167
 Fuse list 168
- G**
- Gear-change indicator 13
 Gear-change indicator (efficiency program) . 24
 Gearbox malfunction (indicator lamp) 76
 Generator
 see Alternator (warning lamp) 16
 Glove box 50
- H**
- Handbrake 69
 Parking 69
 Releasing/applying 69
 Warning lamp 15
 Hazard warning lights 40
 Indicator lamp 20
 Headlight range control 37
 Indicator lamp 19
 Headlights
 Changing bulbs 170, 172
 Headlight range control 37
 Indicator lamp 19
 Washer system 43
 Washing 147
 Head restraints
 Adjusting 47, 48, 102
 Removing/installing 48
 Heated
 Exterior mirrors 41
 Rear window (automatic air conditioner) .. 59
 Rear window (heating/ventilation system
 and manual air conditioner) 57
 Seats (automatic air conditioner) 59
 Heater (supplementary heater for diesel en-
 gine) 55
 Heating
 Washer jets 43
 Heating/ventilation system 55
 Controls 56
 Description 55
 Supplementary heater 55
 Hill hold assist 70
 Hill starting
 see Hill hold assist 70
 Hook 52
 Horn 8
 Hub caps, removing 155
- I**
- Ignition
 Switching on/off (convenience key) 64
 Switching on/off (ignition lock) 62
 Warning lamp 20
 Immobiliser 27
 Indicator lamps
 see Warning lamps 14
 Inflation pressure (tyres) 143
 Inspection intervals 136
 Instrument cluster 10
 Cleaning 148
 Instruments
 Adjusting brightness 41
 Interior lights
 Background lighting 40
 Front and rear 40
 Interior monitor 32
 Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 43
 ISOFIX (securing child seats) 106
- J**
- Jack 153, 157
 Jacking points 157
 Jump-starting 161
- K**
- Key-operated switch for front passenger's air-
 bag 124

Keys	27
Locking and unlocking the vehicle	28, 29
No key identified	66
Replacement keys	27
Replacing the battery	28

Kick-down

Automatic gearbox	75
-------------------------	----

L

Leaving home	39
Left-hand traffic	40

Lights

Background lighting	40
Changing bulbs	170
Coming/leaving home	39
Daytime running lights	37
Dipped headlights	37
Exterior lights	37
Headlight flasher	38
Headlight range control	37
Interior/reading lights	40
Main beam assist	39
Main beam headlights	38
Parking lights	38
Rear fog lights	37
Right-hand traffic	40
Side lights	37

Light sensor/rain sensor

Headlights	37
Indicator lamp	19
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) ...	43

Load-through hatch	53
--------------------------	----

Locking

Doors	31
-------------	----

Locking/unlocking

By remote control	28
With the central locking switch	30
With the convenience key	29
With the key	29

Low-profile tyres	142
-------------------------	-----

Luggage compartment	51
---------------------------	----

Bag	53
Cover	51
Electrical socket	49
Extending	51
Fastening rings	52
Retaining hook	52

Storage net	52
Stowing luggage safely	108
Stretch net	52
Lumbar support	46

M

Main beam headlights	38
Main beam assist	39

Maintenance intervals	136
-----------------------------	-----

Make-up mirrors	42
-----------------------	----

Manual air conditioner

see Air conditioner	55, 56
---------------------------	--------

Manual operation

Boot lid	34
Panorama sun roof	36
Sun blind (sun roof)	36

Manual release

Fuel tank flap	127
Selector lever	76

Matt paintwork, washing	146
-------------------------------	-----

Maximum speed	185
---------------------	-----

Mileage recorder	11
------------------------	----

Mirrors

Adjusting exterior mirrors	41
Anti-dazzle setting	42
Make-up mirrors	42

Mobile phones	180
---------------------	-----

Modifications	180
---------------------	-----

Mounting pin (for changing wheels)	153
--	-----

Multi-function steering wheel	22
-------------------------------------	----

Multicollision brake assist system	93
--	----

N

Net	50
-----------	----

O

Octane rating (petrol)	125
------------------------------	-----

Oil

see Engine oil	130, 131
----------------------	----------

Oil change intervals	136
----------------------------	-----

Oil change service	130
--------------------------	-----

On-board computer	23
-------------------------	----

Opening	26
---------------	----

Bonnet	129
--------------	-----

Fuel tank flap	126
----------------------	-----

Panorama sun roof	35
Windows	34
Outside temperature display	13, 21
Overview (controls and displays)	8

P

Paddle levers (automatic gearbox)	74
Paint damage	148
Paint number	182
Panorama sun roof	35
Manual operation	36
<i>see also</i> Convenience open/close	35
Parking aid	89
Cleaning sensors	147
Malfunction	91
Parking aids	
360° display	90
Adjusting graphic display/warning beeps ..	91
Parking system plus	90
Rear parking aid	89
Towing bracket	92
Parking lights	38
Parking system	
<i>see</i> Parking aids	90
Parking (automatic gearbox)	73
Particulate filter (diesel)	18, 127
Pedals	108
Performance (engine)	185
Petrol	125
Polishing	148
Pollen filter	
<i>see</i> Pollution filter	55
Pollution filter	55
Power management	97
Preheating (glow plugs)	62
Pressures (tyres)	140

Q

quattro (four-wheel drive)	96
----------------------------------	----

R

Radio-operated remote control	
<i>see</i> Remote control keys	27
Radio equipment	180
Radio transmitters	180

Rain sensor/light sensor	
Headlights	37
Indicator lamp	19
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) ...	43
Reading lights	40
Rear carrier systems	
Trailer	80
Rear lights	
Changing bulbs	177
Indicator lamp	19
Washing	147
Rear seats, folding down	51
Rear window	
Washing	43
Rear window heating	
Automatic air conditioner	59
Heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner	57
Recommended gear	13, 24
Remote control keys	27
LED	28
Locking and unlocking the vehicle	28
Personalised key	27
Replacing the battery	28
Synchronisation	28
Removing wheel covers	155
Replacement keys	27
Replacement parts	180
Reset button (trip recorder)	11
Rev counter	10, 11
Rims	141
Roof carrier	53
Roof load	183
Roof rack	53
Run-flat tyres	144
Running in	
New brake pads	95
New engine	60
New tyres	138

S

Safe driving	100
Safelock mechanism	32
Safety	
Airbag system	117
Child seats	103

Correct sitting position	101	Stabilisation control (ESC)	
Head restraints	102	see Electronic stabilisation control	93
Luggage	108	Start/stop system	67
Pedal area	108	Driver messages	69
Seat belts	111	Engine cuts in automatically	68
Safety systems (warning lamp)	17	Engine does not switch off	68
Screwdriver	153	Indicator lamps	67
Seat belts	111	Switching off/on	68
Adjusting	114	Switching off/starting the engine	67
Belt tensioners	115	START ENGINE STOP button	64
Cleaning	148	Starting with jump leads	161
During pregnancy	114	Starting (engine)	62, 64
Height adjustment	115	Steering	
Indicator lamp (rear)	20	Electro-mechanical power steering	96
Putting on	113	Indicator lamp	96
Securing child seats	107	Locking (convenience key)	65
Taking off	115	Locking (ignition lock)	63
Warning lamp (front)	16	Warning lamp	17
Seat heating		Steering lock	
Manual air conditioner	57	Indicator lamp	19
Seats		Steering wheel	
Adjusting	46	Adjusting	62
Cleaning	149	Paddle levers (automatic gearbox)	74
Correct sitting position	101	Storage compartments	50
Easy entry function	46	S tronic (automatic gearbox)	70
Folding down	51	Sun blind	
Seat heating (automatic air conditioner) ..	59	Manual operation (panorama sun roof) 	36
Security central locking	31	Sun roof	
Selective wheel torque control	93	see Panorama sun roof	35
Selector lever (automatic gearbox)		Sun visors	42
Manual release	76	Supplementary heater (vehicles with diesel	
Positions	71	engine)	55
Self-help	152	Suspension control	87
Service interval display	136	Suspension control (indicator lamp)	20
Service intervals	130	Switching off (engine)	63, 65
Service position		Symbols	
see Wiper blades, changing	44	see Warning lamps	14
Servo assist			
see Electro-mechanical power steering ...	96	T	
Side lights	37	Tailgate	
Ski bag	53	see Boot lid	33
Snow chains	142	Technical data	182
Spanner	153	Temperature display	
Spare wheel	159	Coolant	10
Spare wheel (on rear seat bench)	160	Outside temperature	13, 21
Speedometer	10, 21		
Speed warning	85		

- Temperature selection
 Automatic air conditioner 58
 Heating/ventilation system and manual air
 conditioner 56
 Tightening torque (wheel bolts) 158
 tiptronic (automatic gearbox) 74
 Tools 153
 Top tether and ISOFIX (securing child seats) .107
 Torque
 Engine 185
 Wheel bolts 158
 Tow-away protection 32
 Tow-starting 163
 Towing 78
 Indicator lamp 20
 Rear carrier systems 80
 Retrofitting towing bracket 84
 Technical requirements 78
 Towing bracket 80
 Trailer weights 78, 183
 Turn signals 20
 Towing away 163
 Towing bracket
 Parking aids 92
 Towline anchorage 165, 166
 TPMS (tyre pressure loss indicator) 143
 Traction control system 93
 Indicator lamp 17
 Trip recorder, resetting 11
 Turn signals 38
 Changing bulbs 170
 Indicator lamp 20
 Type plate 182
 Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit) 153
 Tyre repair kit 153
 Tyres 138
 Changing 155
 Directional tread 158
 Four-wheel drive 96
 Inflation pressure 140
 Low-profile tyres 142
 Repair kit 153
 Run-flat tyres 144
 Service life 139
 Tyre pressure loss indicator 143
 Tyre pressure (towing a trailer) 78
 Wear indicator 139
- U**
 Unlocking/locking
 By remote control 28
 With the central locking switch 30
 With the convenience key 29
 With the key 29
- V**
 Vehicle
 Raising 157
 Taking out of service 151
 Vehicle data
 Identification data 182
- W**
 Warning lamps 14
 Warning triangle 152
 Washer fluid level (indicator lamp) 19
 Washing 146
 Washing ornamental trim/mouldings 147, 148
 Washing tailpipes 147
 Washing wheel rims 147
 Waxing 148
 Weights 183
 Wheel bolts 141
 Anti-theft 156
 Loosening 156
 Removing the wheel bolt caps 155
 Torque 158
 Wheel imbalance 139
 Wheels 138
 Changing 155
 Tyre pressure loss indicator 143
 Washing 147
 Windows
 Cleaning/de-icing 148
 Windscreen
 Washing 43
 Windscreen washer system 43, 136
 Reservoir capacity 183
 Windscreen wipers
 Changing blades 44, 45
 Cleaning wiper blades 44
 Lifting wipers off windscreen 44
 Switching on/off 43

Winter conditions

Cooling system	132
De-icing windows	148
Defrosting windows (automatic air conditioner)	59
Defrosting windows (heating/ventilation system and manual air conditioner)	56
Diesel	125
Seat heating (automatic air conditioner) ..	59
Snow chains	142
Tyres	141
Vehicle battery	134
Washing the vehicle	146
Windscreen washer system	136
Winter tyres	141
Wiper blades, changing	44, 45
Wrench	153

X

Xenon headlights

Changing bulbs	170
----------------------	-----

AUDI AG works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. AUDI AG reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The Owner's Manual is based on the information available at the time of printing. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations or descriptions in this publication.

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right

to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85045 Ingolstadt, Germany

© 2016 AUDI



For the sake of the environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

